

Standards

Standards MX

Message Reference Guide

FIToFIPaymentReversalV13 (pacs.007.001.13)

This publication includes information exported from the MyStandards web platform.

For the official documentation of the messages included in this publication, see the relevant Standards MX Message Reference Guides available on swift.com > Support > Documentation

Table of Contents

1	MX pacs.007.001.13 FIToFIPaymentReversalV13	3
1.1	MessageDefinition Functionality	3
1.2	Structure	4
1.3	Constraints	9
1.4	Message Building Blocks	18
2	Message Items Types	99
2.1	MessageComponents	99
2.2	Message Datatypes	183
	Legal Notices	222

1 **MX pacs.007.001.13**

FIToFIPaymentReversalV13

1.1 **MessageDefinition Functionality**

Scope

The FinancialInstitutionToFinancialInstitutionPaymentReversal message is sent by an agent to the next party in the payment chain. It is used to reverse a payment previously executed.

Usage

The FIToFIPaymentReversal message is exchanged between agents to reverse a payment message that has been settled. The result will be a credit on the debtor account (when the reversed payment was a direct debit) or a debit on the creditor account (when the reversed payment was a credit transfer).

The FIToFIPaymentReversal message may or may not be the follow-up of a payment message.

The FIToFIPaymentReversal message refers to the original payment message by means of references only or by means of references and a set of elements from the original instruction.

The FIToFIPaymentReversal message can be used in domestic and cross-border scenarios.

Outline

The FIToFIPaymentReversalV13 MessageDefinition is composed of 4 MessageBuildingBlocks:

A. GroupHeader

Set of characteristics shared by all individual transactions included in the message.

B. OriginalGroupInformation

Information concerning the original group of transactions, to which the message refers.

C. TransactionInformation

Information concerning the original transactions, to which the reversal message refers.

D. SupplementaryData

Additional information that cannot be captured in the structured elements and/or any other specific block.

1.2 Structure

Index	Or	MessageElement/BuildingBlock<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
		Message root <Document> <FIToFIPmtRvsl>	[1..1]		✓C12, C14, ✓C15, ✓C16, ✓C17, ✓C21, ✓C23, C25, ✓C26, C34, C39, ✓C40, ✓C41	
		GroupHeader <GrpHdr>	[1..1]		✓C8, ✓C38, C13	18
		MessageIdentification <MsgId>	[1..1]	Text		21
		CreationDateTime <CreDtTm>	[1..1]	DateTime		21
		Authorisation <Authstn>	[0..2]	±		21
		BatchBooking <BtchBookg>	[0..1]	Indicator		22
		NumberOfTransactions <NbOfTx>	[1..1]	Text		22
		ControlSum <CtrlSum>	[0..1]	Quantity		22
		GroupReversal <GrpRvsl>	[0..1]	Indicator		22
		TotalReversedInterbankSettlementAmount <TtlRvslIntrBkSttlmAmt>	[0..1]	Amount	✓C1, ✓C10	22
		InterbankSettlementDate <IntrBkSttlmDt>	[0..1]	Date		23
		SettlementInformation <SttlmInf>	[1..1]		✓C22, ✓C24, ✓C30, ✓C31, ✓C32, ✓C33, ✓C36, ✓C37	23
		SettlementMethod <SttlmMtd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		26
		SettlementAccount <SttlmAcct>	[0..1]	±	✓C20, C19	26
		ClearingSystem <ClrSys>	[0..1]			27
	{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		27
	Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		27
		InstructingReimbursementAgent <InstgRmbrsmntAgt>	[0..1]	±		27

Index	Or	MessageElement/BuildingBlock<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
		InstructingReimbursementAgentAccount <InstgRmbrsmntAgtAcct>	[0..1]	±	✓C20, C19	28
		InstructedReimbursementAgent <InstdRmbrsmntAgt>	[0..1]	±		29
		InstructedReimbursementAgentAccount <InstdRmbrsmntAgtAcct>	[0..1]	±	✓C20, C19	30
		ThirdReimbursementAgent <ThrdRmbrsmntAgt>	[0..1]	±		30
		ThirdReimbursementAgentAccount <ThrdRmbrsmntAgtAcct>	[0..1]	±	✓C20, C19	31
		InstructingAgent <InstgAgt>	[0..1]	±		32
		InstructedAgent <InstdAgt>	[0..1]	±		32
		OriginalGroupInformation <OrgnlGrpInf>	[0..1]			33
		OriginalMessageIdentification <OrgnlMsgId>	[1..1]	Text		34
		OriginalMessageNameIdentification <OrgnlMsgNmId>	[1..1]	Text		34
		OriginalCreationDateTime <OrgnlCreDtTm>	[0..1]	DateTime		34
		ReversalReasonInformation <RvslRsnInf>	[0..*]			34
		Originator <Orgtr>	[0..1]	±		35
		Reason <Rsn>	[0..1]			36
	{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		37
	Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		37
		AdditionalInformation <AddtlInf>	[0..*]	Text		37
		TransactionInformation <TxInf>	[0..*]		✓C7, ✓C28, ✓C29	37
		ReversalIdentification <RvslId>	[0..1]	Text		42
		OriginalGroupInformation <OrgnlGrpInf>	[0..1]	±		42
		OriginalInstructionIdentification <OrgnlInstrId>	[0..1]	Text		42
		OriginalEndToEndIdentification <OrgnlEndToEndId>	[0..1]	Text		43
		OriginalTransactionIdentification <OrgnlTxId>	[0..1]	Text		43
		OriginalUETR <OrgnlUETR>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		43
		OriginalClearingSystemReference <OrgnlClrSysRef>	[0..1]	Text		43
		OriginalInterbankSettlementAmount <OrgnlIntrBkSttlmAmt>	[0..1]	Amount	✓C2, ✓C11	43
		ReversedInterbankSettlementAmount <RvslIntrBkSttlmAmt>	[1..1]	Amount	✓C1, ✓C10	44
		InterbankSettlementDate <IntrBkSttlmDt>	[0..1]	Date		45
		SettlementPriority <SttlmPrty>	[0..1]	CodeSet		45

Index	Or	MessageElement/BuildingBlock<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
		SettlementTimeIndication <SttlmTmIndctn>	[0..1]			45
		DebitDateTime <DbtDtTm>	[0..1]	DateTime		45
		CreditDateTime <CdtDtTm>	[0..1]	DateTime		46
		ReversedInstructedAmount <RvslInstdAmt>	[0..1]	Amount	✓C2, ✓C11	46
		ExchangeRate <XchgRate>	[0..1]	Rate		46
		CompensationAmount <CompstnAmt>	[0..1]	Amount	✓C2, ✓C11	47
		ChargeBearer <ChrgBr>	[0..1]	CodeSet		47
		ChargesInformation <ChrgsInf>	[0..*]			48
		Amount <Amt>	[1..1]	Amount	✓C2, ✓C11	48
		Agent <Agt>	[1..1]	±		49
		Type <Tp>	[0..1]			49
	{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		50
	Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	±		50
		InstructingAgent <InstgAgt>	[0..1]	±		50
		InstructedAgent <InstdAgt>	[0..1]	±		51
		ReversalReasonInformation <RvslRsnInf>	[0..*]			51
		Originator <Orgtr>	[0..1]	±		52
		Reason <Rsn>	[0..1]			53
	{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		53
	Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		53
		AdditionalInformation <AddtlInf>	[0..*]	Text		53
		OriginalTransactionReference <OrgnlTxRef>	[0..1]			53
		InterbankSettlementAmount <IntrBkSttlmAmt>	[0..1]	Amount	✓C2, ✓C11	56
		Amount <Amt>	[0..1]	±		57
		InterbankSettlementDate <IntrBkSttlmDt>	[0..1]	Date		57
		RequestedCollectionDate <ReqdColltnDt>	[0..1]	Date		57
		RequestedExecutionDate <ReqdExctnDt>	[0..1]	±		57
		CreditorSchemeIdentification <CdtrSchmeld>	[0..1]	±		58
		SettlementInformation <SttlmInf>	[0..1]		✓C22, ✓C24, ✓C30, ✓C31,	59

Index	Or	MessageElement/BuildingBlock<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
					✓C32, ✓C33, ✓C36, ✓C37	
		SettlementMethod <SttlmMtd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		62
		SettlementAccount <SttlmAcct>	[0..1]	±	✓C20, C19	62
		ClearingSystem <ClrSys>	[0..1]			63
	{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		63
	Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		63
		InstructingReimbursementAgent <InstgRmbrsmntAgt>	[0..1]	±		63
		InstructingReimbursementAgentAccount <InstgRmbrsmntAgtAcct>	[0..1]	±	✓C20, C19	64
		InstructedReimbursementAgent <InstdRmbrsmntAgt>	[0..1]	±		65
		InstructedReimbursementAgentAccount <InstdRmbrsmntAgtAcct>	[0..1]	±	✓C20, C19	66
		ThirdReimbursementAgent <ThrdRmbrsmntAgt>	[0..1]	±		66
		ThirdReimbursementAgentAccount <ThrdRmbrsmntAgtAcct>	[0..1]	±	✓C20, C19	67
		PaymentTypeInformation <PmtTpInf>	[0..1]	±		68
		PaymentMethod <PmtMtd>	[0..1]	CodeSet		68
		MandateRelatedInformation <MndtRltdInf>	[0..1]			69
	{Or	DirectDebitMandate <DrctDbtMndt>	[0..1]		✓C3, ✓C4	71
		MandateIdentification <MndtId>	[0..1]	Text		73
		DateOfSignature <DtOfSgntr>	[0..1]	Date		73
		AmendmentIndicator <AmdmntInd>	[0..1]	Indicator		73
		AmendmentInformationDetails <AmdmntInfDtls>	[0..1]			73
		OriginalMandateIdentification <OrgnlMndtId>	[0..1]	Text		74
		OriginalCreditorSchemeIdentification <OrgnlCdtrSchmId>	[0..1]	±		74
		OriginalCreditorAgent <OrgnlCdtrAgt>	[0..1]	±		75
		OriginalCreditorAgentAccount <OrgnlCdtrAgtAcct>	[0..1]	±	✓C20, C19	76
		OriginalDebtor <OrgnlDbtr>	[0..1]	±		77
		OriginalDebtorAccount <OrgnlDbtrAcct>	[0..1]	±	✓C20, C19	78
		OriginalDebtorAgent <OrgnlDbtrAgt>	[0..1]	±		79

Index	Or	MessageElement/BuildingBlock<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
		OriginalDebtorAgentAccount <OrgnlDbtrAgtAcct>	[0..1]	±	✓C20, C19	80
		OriginalFinalCollectionDate <OrgnlFnlColltnDt>	[0..1]	Date		81
		OriginalFrequency <OrgnlFrqcy>	[0..1]	±		81
		OriginalReason <OrgnlRsn>	[0..1]			81
	{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		82
	Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		82
		OriginalTrackingDays <OrgnlTrckgDays>	[0..1]	Text		82
		ElectronicSignature <ElctrcSgntr>	[0..1]	Text		82
		FirstCollectionDate <FrstColltnDt>	[0..1]	Date		82
		FinalCollectionDate <FnlColltnDt>	[0..1]	Date		82
		Frequency <Frqcy>	[0..1]	±		82
		Reason <Rsn>	[0..1]			83
	{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		83
	Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		83
		TrackingDays <TrckgDays>	[0..1]	Text		83
	Or}	CreditTransferMandate <CdtTrfMndt>	[0..1]	±		83
		RemittanceInformation <RmtInf>	[0..1]	±		84
		UltimateDebtor <UltmtDbtr>	[0..1]			84
	{Or	Party <Pty>	[1..1]	±		84
	Or}	Agent <Agt>	[1..1]	±		85
		Debtor <Dbtr>	[0..1]			86
	{Or	Party <Pty>	[1..1]	±		86
	Or}	Agent <Agt>	[1..1]	±		87
		DebtorAccount <DbtrAcct>	[0..1]	±	✓C20, C19	88
		DebtorAgent <DbtrAgt>	[0..1]	±		89
		DebtorAgentAccount <DbtrAgtAcct>	[0..1]	±	✓C20, C19	89
		CreditorAgent <CdtrAgt>	[0..1]	±		90
		CreditorAgentAccount <CdtrAgtAcct>	[0..1]	±	✓C20, C19	91
		Creditor <Cdtr>	[0..1]			92
	{Or	Party <Pty>	[1..1]	±		92

Index	Or	MessageElement/BuildingBlock<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Or}	Agent <Agt>	[1..1]	±		93
		CreditorAccount <CdtrAcct>	[0..1]	±	✓C20, C19	94
		UltimateCreditor <UltmtCdtr>	[0..1]			95
	{Or	Party <Pty>	[1..1]	±		95
	Or}	Agent <Agt>	[1..1]	±		96
		Purpose <Purp>	[0..1]	±		97
		SupplementaryData <SplmtryData>	[0..*]	±	C35	97
		SupplementaryData <SplmtryData>	[0..*]	±	C35	98

1.3 Constraints

C1 ActiveCurrency ✓

(Rule)

The currency code must be a valid active currency code, not yet withdrawn on the day the message containing the currency is exchanged. Valid active currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and are not yet withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged. (Algorithm)

Error handling:

- *Error severity:* Fatal
- *Error Code:* D00005
- *Error Text:* Invalid currency code

C2 ActiveOrHistoricCurrency ✓

(Rule)

The Currency Code must be registered, or have already been registered. Valid active or historic currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and may be or not be withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged. (Algorithm)

Error handling:

- *Error severity:* Fatal
- *Error Code:* D00006
- *Error Text:* Invalid currency code.

C3 AmendmentIndicatorFalseRule ✓

(Rule)

If AmendmentIndicator is false, then AmendmentInformationDetails is not allowed. (CrossElementComplexRule)

Error handling:

- *Error severity:* Fatal
- *Error Code:* X00013
- *Error Text:* Invalid message content for false amendment indicator and details.

C4 AmendmentIndicatorTrueRule ✓

(Rule)

If AmendmentIndicator is true, then AmendmentInformationDetails must be present. (CrossElementComplexRule)

Error handling:

- *Error severity:* Fatal
- *Error Code:* X00012
- *Error Text:* Invalid message content for true amendment indicator and details.

C5 AnyBIC ✓

(Rule)

Only a valid Business identifier code is allowed. Business identifier codes for financial or non-financial institutions are registered and published by the ISO 9362 Registration Authority in the ISO directory of BICs, and consists of eight (8) or eleven (11) contiguous characters. (Algorithm)

Error handling:

- *Error severity:* Fatal
- *Error Code:* D00008
- *Error Text:* Invalid BIC.

C6 BICFI ✓

(Rule)

Valid BICs for financial institutions are registered and published by the ISO 9362 Registration Authority in the ISO directory of BICs, and consist of eight (8) or eleven (11) contiguous characters. (Algorithm)

Error handling:

- *Error severity:* Fatal
- *Error Code:* D00001
- *Error Text:* Invalid FI BIC.

C7 ChargesInformationAndReversedInstructedAmountRule ✓

(Rule)

If ChargesInformation is present, then ReversedInstructedAmount must be present. (CrossElementComplexRule)

Error handling:

- *Error severity:* Fatal
- *Error Code:* X00048
- *Error Text:* Invalid message content for instructed amount when charges information is present.

C8 ControlSumAndGroupReversalRule ✓

(Rule)

If GroupReversal is true, then ControlSum is not allowed. (CrossElementComplexRule)

Error handling:

- *Error severity:* Fatal
- *Error Code:* X00067
- *Error Text:* Invalid message content for control sum.

C9 Country ✓

(Rule)

The code is checked against the list of country names obtained from the United Nations (ISO 3166, Alpha-2 code). (Algorithm)

Error handling:

- *Error severity:* Fatal
- *Error Code:* D00004
- *Error Text:* Invalid Country Code.

C10 CurrencyAmount ✓

(Rule)

The number of fractional digits (or minor unit of currency) must comply with ISO 4217.

Note: The decimal separator is a dot. (Algorithm)

Error handling:

- *Error severity:* Fatal
- *Error Code:* D00007
- *Error Text:* Invalid currency code or too many decimal digits.

C11 CurrencyAmount ✓

(Rule)

The number of fractional digits (or minor unit of currency) must comply with ISO 4217.

Note: The decimal separator is a dot. (Algorithm)

Error handling:

- *Error severity:* Fatal
- *Error Code:* D00007
- *Error Text:* Invalid currency code or too many decimal digits.

C12 GroupHeaderInterbankSettlementDateRule ✓

(Rule)

If GroupHeader/InterbankSettlementDate is present, then TransactionInformation/InterbankSettlementDate is not allowed. (CrossElementComplexRule)

Error handling:

- *Error severity:* Fatal
- *Error Code:* X00045
- *Error Text:* Invalid message content for interbank settlement date.

This constraint is defined at the MessageDefinition level.

C13 GroupReversalAndNumberOfTransactionsGuideline

(Guideline)

If GroupReversal is true, then NumberOfTransactions equals the number of transactions in the original message.

C14 GroupReversalAndNumberOfTransactionsRule

(Rule)

If GroupHeader/GroupReversal is false, then GroupHeader/NumberOfTransactions must equal the number of occurrences of TransactionInformation. (CrossElementComplexRule)

Error handling:

- *Error severity:* Fatal
- *Error Code:* X00062
- *Error Text:* Invalid message content for number of transactions.

This constraint is defined at the MessageDefinition level.

C15 GroupReversalAndReasonRule ✓

(Rule)

If GroupHeader/GroupReversal is true, then OriginalGroupInformation/ReversalReasonInformation/Reason must present. (CrossElementComplexRule)

Error handling:

- *Error severity:* Fatal
- *Error Code:* X00072
- *Error Text:* Invalid message content for reversal reason information in case of group reversal.

This constraint is defined at the MessageDefinition level.

C16 GroupReversalAndTransactionInformationNotPresentRule ✓

(Rule)

If GroupHeader/GroupReversal is true, then TransactionInformation is not allowed. (CrossElementComplexRule)

Error handling:

- *Error severity:* Fatal
- *Error Code:* X00073
- *Error Text:* Invalid message content for group reversal and transaction information.

This constraint is defined at the MessageDefinition level.

C17 GroupReversalAndTransactionInformationPresentRule ✓

(Rule)

If GroupHeader/GroupReversal is false, then at least one occurrence of TransactionInformation must be present. (CrossElementComplexRule)

Error handling:

- *Error severity:* Fatal
- *Error Code:* X00074
- *Error Text:* Invalid message content for group reversal and transaction information.

This constraint is defined at the MessageDefinition level.

C18 IBAN ✓

(Rule)

A valid IBAN consists of all three of the following components: Country Code, check digits and BBAN. (Algorithm)

Error handling:

- *Error severity:* Fatal
- *Error Code:* D00003
- *Error Text:* Invalid IBAN format or invalid check digits.

C19 IdentificationAndProxyGuideline

(Guideline)

If the account identification is not defined through a conventional identification such as an email address or a mobile number, then the proxy element should be used for the identification of the account.

C20 IdentificationOrProxyPresenceRule ✓

(Rule)

Identification must be present or Proxy must be present. Both may be present. (CrossElementSimpleRule)

Error handling:

- *Error severity:* Fatal
- *Error Code:* X00498
- *Error Text:* Missing account identification or account proxy.

C21 InstructedAgentRule ✓

(Rule)

If GroupHeader/InstructedAgent is present, then TransactionInformation/InstructedAgent is not allowed. (CrossElementComplexRule)

Error handling:

- *Error severity:* Fatal
- *Error Code:* X00008
- *Error Text:* Invalid message content for instructed agent.

This constraint is defined at the MessageDefinition level.

C22 InstructedReimbursementAgentAccountRule ✓

(Rule)

If InstructedReimbursementAgentAccount is present, then InstructedReimbursementAgent must be present. (CrossElementComplexRule)

Error handling:

- *Error severity:* Fatal
- *Error Code:* X00037
- *Error Text:* Invalid message content for instructed reimbursement agent account.

C23 InstructingAgentRule ✓

(Rule)

If GroupHeader/InstructingAgent is present, then TransactionInformation/InstructingAgent is not allowed. (CrossElementComplexRule)

Error handling:

- *Error severity:* Fatal
- *Error Code:* X00007
- *Error Text:* Invalid message content for instructing agent.

This constraint is defined at the MessageDefinition level.

C24 InstructingReimbursementAgentAccountRule ✓

(Rule)

If InstructingReimbursementAgentAccount is present, then InstructingReimbursementAgent must be present. (CrossElementComplexRule)

Error handling:

- *Error severity:* Fatal
- *Error Code:* X00038
- *Error Text:* Invalid message content for instructing reimbursement agent account.

C25 NoCoverSettlementMethodRule

(Rule)

GroupHeader/SettlementInformation/SettlementMethod must be different from COVE (Cover) when reversing direct debit transactions. (CrossElementComplexRule)

This constraint is defined at the MessageDefinition level.

C26 OriginalGroupInformationRule ✓

(Rule)

If OriginalGroupInformation is present, then TransactionInformation/OriginalGroupInformation is not allowed. (CrossElementComplexRule)

Error handling:

- *Error severity:* Fatal
- *Error Code:* X00016
- *Error Text:* Invalid message content for original group information.

This constraint is defined at the MessageDefinition level.

C27 RemittanceAmountAndTypeGuideline

(Guideline)

If Type/Code is equal to CREN, DUPA or REMI for RemittanceAmountAndType, RemittanceAmountAndType must not be repeated.

C28 ReversedInstructedAmountAndExchangeRate1Rule ✓

(Rule)

If ReversedInstructedAmount is present and the currency is different from the currency in InterbankSettlementAmount, then ExchangeRate must be present. (CrossElementComplexRule)

Error handling:

- *Error severity:* Fatal
- *Error Code:* X00049
- *Error Text:* Invalid message content for exchange rate when instructed amount is present.

C29 ReversedInstructedAmountAndExchangeRate2Rule ✓

(Rule)

If ReversedInstructedAmount is present and the currency is the same as the currency in InterbankSettlementAmount, then ExchangeRate is not allowed. (CrossElementComplexRule)

Error handling:

- *Error severity:* Fatal
- *Error Code:* X00050
- *Error Text:* Invalid message content for exchange rate when instructed amount is not present.

C30 SettlementMethodAgentRule ✓*(Rule)*

If SettlementMethod is equal to INDA or INGA, then ReimbursementAgent(s) and ClearingSystem are not allowed. (CrossElementComplexRule)

Error handling:

- *Error severity:* Fatal
- *Error Code:* X00018
- *Error Text:* Invalid message content for settlement method INGA or INDA.

C31 SettlementMethodClearingRule ✓*(Rule)*

If SettlementMethod is equal to CLRG, then SettlementAccount and ReimbursementAgent(s) are not allowed. (CrossElementComplexRule)

Error handling:

- *Error severity:* Fatal
- *Error Code:* X00019
- *Error Text:* Invalid message content for settlement method CLRG.

C32 SettlementMethodCoverAgentRule ✓*(Rule)*

If SettlementMethod is equal to COVE, then InstructedReimbursementAgent or InstructingReimbursementAgent must be present. (CrossElementComplexRule)

Error handling:

- *Error severity:* Fatal
- *Error Code:* X00076
- *Error Text:* Invalid message content for cover settlement method and reimbursement agents.

C33 SettlementMethodCoverRule ✓*(Rule)*

If SettlementMethod is equal to COVE, then SettlementAccount and ClearingSystem are not allowed. (CrossElementComplexRule)

Error handling:

- *Error severity:* Fatal
- *Error Code:* X00075

- *Error Text:* Invalid message content for cover settlement method with settlement account and clearing system.

C34 SupplementaryDataRule

(Rule)

The SupplementaryData building block at message level must not be used to provide additional information about a transaction. The SupplementaryData element at transaction level should be used for that purpose.

This constraint is defined at the MessageDefinition level.

C35 SupplementaryDataRule

(Rule)

This component may not be used without the explicit approval of a SEG and submission to the RA of ISO 20022 compliant structure(s) to be used in the Envelope element.

C36 ThirdReimbursementAgentAccountRule ✓

(Rule)

If ThirdReimbursementAgentAccount is present, then ThirdReimbursementAgent must be present. (CrossElementComplexRule)

Error handling:

- *Error severity:* Fatal
- *Error Code:* X00039
- *Error Text:* Invalid message content for third reimbursement agent account.

C37 ThirdReimbursementAgentRule ✓

(Rule)

If ThirdReimbursementAgent is present, then InstructingReimbursementAgent and InstructedReimbursementAgent must both be present. (CrossElementComplexRule)

Error handling:

- *Error severity:* Fatal
- *Error Code:* X00040
- *Error Text:* Invalid message content for third reimbursement agent.

C38 TotalInterbankSettlementAmountAndDateRule ✓

(Rule)

If TotalReversedInterbankSettlementAmount is present, then InterbankSettlementDate must be present. (CrossElementComplexRule)

Error handling:

- *Error severity:* Fatal
- *Error Code:* X00044
- *Error Text:* Invalid message content for group header interbank settlement date.

C39 TotalReversedInterbankSettlementAmountAndSumRule

(Rule)

GroupHeader/TotalReversedInterbankSettlementAmount must equal the sum of all individual TransactionInformation/ReversedInterbankSettlementAmount when present. (CrossElementComplexRule)

Error handling:

- *Error severity:* Fatal
- *Error Code:* X00043
- *Error Text:* Invalid message content for the total interbank settlement amount and sum of individual interbank settlement amounts.

This constraint is defined at the MessageDefinition level.

C40 TotalReversedInterbankSettlementAmountRule ✓

(Rule)

If GroupHeader/TotalReversedInterbankSettlementAmount is present, then all occurrences of TransactionInformation/ReversedInterbankSettlementAmount must have the same currency as the currency of GroupHeader/TotalReversedInterbankSettlementAmount. (CrossElementComplexRule)

Error handling:

- *Error severity:* Fatal
- *Error Code:* X00042
- *Error Text:* Invalid message content for the total interbank settlement amount and individual interbank settlement amount currencies.

This constraint is defined at the MessageDefinition level.

C41 TransactionInterbankSettlementDateRule ✓

(Rule)

If GroupHeader/InterbankSettlementDate is not present, then TransactionInformation/InterbankSettlementDate must be present. (CrossElementComplexRule)

Error handling:

- *Error severity:* Fatal
- *Error Code:* X00290
- *Error Text:* Invalid message content for interbank settlement date.

This constraint is defined at the MessageDefinition level.

1.4 Message Building Blocks

This chapter describes the MessageBuildingBlocks of this MessageDefinition.

1.4.1 GroupHeader <GrpHdr>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Set of characteristics shared by all individual transactions included in the message.

Impacted by: ✓ C8 ControlSumAndGroupReversalRule ✓,
✓ C38 TotalInterbankSettlementAmountAndDateRule ✓, C13
GroupReversalAndNumberOfTransactionsGuideline

GroupHeader <GrpHdr> contains the following **GroupHeader127** elements

Index	Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
		MessageIdentification <MsgId>	[1..1]	Text		21
		CreationDateTime <CreDtTm>	[1..1]	DateTime		21
		Authorisation <Authstn>	[0..2]	±		21
		BatchBooking <BtchBookg>	[0..1]	Indicator		22
		NumberOfTransactions <NbOfTxs>	[1..1]	Text		22
		ControlSum <CtrlSum>	[0..1]	Quantity		22
		GroupReversal <GrpRvsl>	[0..1]	Indicator		22
		TotalReversedInterbankSettlementAmount <TtlRvslIntrBkSttlmAmt>	[0..1]	Amount	✓C1, ✓C10	22
		InterbankSettlementDate <IntrBkSttlmDt>	[0..1]	Date		23
		SettlementInformation <SttlmInf>	[1..1]		✓C22, ✓C24, ✓C30, ✓C31, ✓C32, ✓C33, ✓C36, ✓C37	23
		SettlementMethod <SttlmMtd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		26
		SettlementAccount <SttlmAcct>	[0..1]	±	✓C20, C19	26
		ClearingSystem <ClrSys>	[0..1]			27
	{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		27
	Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		27
		InstructingReimbursementAgent <InstgRmbrsmntAgt>	[0..1]	±		27
		InstructingReimbursementAgentAccount <InstgRmbrsmntAgtAcct>	[0..1]	±	✓C20, C19	28
		InstructedReimbursementAgent <InstdRmbrsmntAgt>	[0..1]	±		29
		InstructedReimbursementAgentAccount <InstdRmbrsmntAgtAcct>	[0..1]	±	✓C20, C19	30
		ThirdReimbursementAgent <ThrdRmbrsmntAgt>	[0..1]	±		30
		ThirdReimbursementAgentAccount <ThrdRmbrsmntAgtAcct>	[0..1]	±	✓C20, C19	31
		InstructingAgent <InstgAgt>	[0..1]	±		32
		InstructedAgent <InstdAgt>	[0..1]	±		32

Constraints

- **ControlSumAndGroupReversalRule**

If GroupReversal is true, then ControlSum is not allowed.

Error handling:

- *Error severity:* Fatal
- *Error Code:* X00067
- *Error Text:* Invalid message content for control sum.

- **GroupReversalAndNumberOfTransactionsGuideline**

If GroupReversal is true, then NumberOfTransactions equals the number of transactions in the original message.

- **TotalInterbankSettlementAmountAndDateRule**

If TotalReversedInterbankSettlementAmount is present, then InterbankSettlementDate must be present.

Error handling:

- *Error severity:* Fatal
- *Error Code:* X00044
- *Error Text:* Invalid message content for group header interbank settlement date.

1.4.1.1 MessageIdentification <MsgId>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Point to point reference, as assigned by the instructing party, and sent to the next party in the chain to unambiguously identify the message.

Usage: The instructing party has to make sure that MessageIdentification is unique per instructed party for a pre-agreed period.

Datatype: Max35Text on page 220

1.4.1.2 CreationDateTime <CreDtTm>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Date and time at which the message was created.

Datatype: ISODatetime on page 214

1.4.1.3 Authorisation <Authstn>

Presence: [0..2]

Definition: User identification or any user key to be used to check whether the initiating party is allowed to initiate transactions from the account specified in the message.

Usage: The content is not of a technical nature, but reflects the organisational structure at the initiating side.

The authorisation element can typically be used in relay scenarios, payment initiations, payment returns or payment reversals that are initiated on behalf of a party different from the initiating party.

Authorisation <Authstn> contains one of the following elements (see [Authorisation1Choice](#) on page 123 for details)

Index	Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		123
	Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		123

1.4.1.4 BatchBooking <BtchBookg>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Identifies whether a single entry per individual transaction or a batch entry for the sum of the amounts of all transactions within the group of a message is requested.

Usage: Batch booking is used to request and not order a possible batch booking.

Datatype: One of the following values must be used (see [BatchBookingIndicator](#) on page 216):

- *Meaning When True:* Identifies that a batch entry for the sum of the amounts of all transactions in the batch or message is requested.
- *Meaning When False:* Identifies that a single entry for each of the transactions in the batch or message is requested.

1.4.1.5 NumberOfTransactions <NbOfTx>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Number of individual transactions contained in the message.

Datatype: [Max15NumericText](#) on page 219

1.4.1.6 ControlSum <CtrlSum>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Total of all individual amounts included in the message, irrespective of currencies.

Datatype: [DecimalNumber](#) on page 217

1.4.1.7 GroupReversal <GrpRvsl>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Indicates whether the reversal applies to the whole group of transactions or to individual transactions within the original group.

Datatype: One of the following values must be used (see [TrueFalseIndicator](#) on page 216):

- *Meaning When True:* True
- *Meaning When False:* False

1.4.1.8 TotalReversedInterbankSettlementAmount <TtlRvslIntrBkSttlmAmt>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Total amount of money moved between the instructing agent and the instructed agent in the reversal message.

Impacted by: ✓C1 ActiveCurrency ✓, ✓C10 CurrencyAmount ✓

Datatype: ActiveCurrencyAndAmount on page 183

Constraints

- **ActiveCurrency**

The currency code must be a valid active currency code, not yet withdrawn on the day the message containing the currency is exchanged. Valid active currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and are not yet withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

Error handling:

- *Error severity:* Fatal
- *Error Code:* D00005
- *Error Text:* Invalid currency code

- **CurrencyAmount**

The number of fractional digits (or minor unit of currency) must comply with ISO 4217.

Note: The decimal separator is a dot.

Error handling:

- *Error severity:* Fatal
- *Error Code:* D00007
- *Error Text:* Invalid currency code or too many decimal digits.

1.4.1.9 InterbankSettlementDate <IntrBkSttlmDt>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Date on which the amount of money ceases to be available to the agent that owes it and when the amount of money becomes available to the agent to which it is due.

Datatype: ISODate on page 214

1.4.1.10 SettlementInformation <SttlmInf>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Specifies the details on how the settlement of the transaction(s) between the instructing agent and the instructed agent is completed.

Impacted by: ✓C22 InstructedReimbursementAgentAccountRule ✓, ✓C24 InstructingReimbursementAgentAccountRule ✓, ✓C30 SettlementMethodAgentRule ✓, ✓C31 SettlementMethodClearingRule ✓, ✓C32 SettlementMethodCoverAgentRule ✓, ✓C33 SettlementMethodCoverRule ✓, ✓C36 ThirdReimbursementAgentAccountRule ✓, ✓C37 ThirdReimbursementAgentRule ✓

SettlementInformation <SttlmInf> contains the following **SettlementInstruction15** elements

Index	Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
		SettlementMethod <SttlmMtd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		26
		SettlementAccount <SttlmAcct>	[0..1]	±	✓C20, C19	26
		ClearingSystem <ClrSys>	[0..1]			27
	{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		27
	Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		27
		InstructingReimbursementAgent <InstgRmbrsmntAgt>	[0..1]	±		27
		InstructingReimbursementAgentAccount <InstgRmbrsmntAgtAcct>	[0..1]	±	✓C20, C19	28
		InstructedReimbursementAgent <InstdRmbrsmntAgt>	[0..1]	±		29
		InstructedReimbursementAgentAccount <InstdRmbrsmntAgtAcct>	[0..1]	±	✓C20, C19	30
		ThirdReimbursementAgent <ThrdRmbrsmntAgt>	[0..1]	±		30
		ThirdReimbursementAgentAccount <ThrdRmbrsmntAgtAcct>	[0..1]	±	✓C20, C19	31

Constraints

- **InstructedReimbursementAgentAccountRule**

If InstructedReimbursementAgentAccount is present, then InstructedReimbursementAgent must be present.

Error handling:

- *Error severity:* Fatal
- *Error Code:* X00037
- *Error Text:* Invalid message content for instructed reimbursement agent account.

- **InstructingReimbursementAgentAccountRule**

If InstructingReimbursementAgentAccount is present, then InstructingReimbursementAgent must be present.

Error handling:

- *Error severity:* Fatal
- *Error Code:* X00038
- *Error Text:* Invalid message content for instructing reimbursement agent account.

- **SettlementMethodAgentRule**

If SettlementMethod is equal to INDA or INGA, then ReimbursementAgent(s) and ClearingSystem are not allowed.

Error handling:

- *Error severity:* Fatal
- *Error Code:* X00018
- *Error Text:* Invalid message content for settlement method INGA or INDA.

- **SettlementMethodClearingRule**

If SettlementMethod is equal to CLRG, then SettlementAccount and ReimbursementAgent(s) are not allowed.

Error handling:

- *Error severity:* Fatal
- *Error Code:* X00019
- *Error Text:* Invalid message content for settlement method CLRG.

- **SettlementMethodCoverAgentRule**

If SettlementMethod is equal to COVE, then InstructedReimbursementAgent or InstructingReimbursementAgent must be present.

Error handling:

- *Error severity:* Fatal
- *Error Code:* X00076
- *Error Text:* Invalid message content for cover settlement method and reimbursement agents.

- **SettlementMethodCoverRule**

If SettlementMethod is equal to COVE, then SettlementAccount and ClearingSystem are not allowed.

Error handling:

- *Error severity:* Fatal
- *Error Code:* X00075
- *Error Text:* Invalid message content for cover settlement method with settlement account and clearing system.

- **ThirdReimbursementAgentAccountRule**

If ThirdReimbursementAgentAccount is present, then ThirdReimbursementAgent must be present.

Error handling:

- *Error severity:* Fatal
- *Error Code:* X00039
- *Error Text:* Invalid message content for third reimbursement agent account.

- **ThirdReimbursementAgentRule**

If ThirdReimbursementAgent is present, then InstructingReimbursementAgent and InstructedReimbursementAgent must both be present.

Error handling:

- *Error severity:* Fatal
- *Error Code:* X00040
- *Error Text:* Invalid message content for third reimbursement agent.

1.4.1.10.1 SettlementMethod <SttlmMtd>*Presence:* [1..1]*Definition:* Method used to settle the (batch of) payment instructions.*Datatype:* [SettlementMethod1Code](#) on page 211

CodeName	Name	Definition
INDA	InstructedAgent	Settlement is done by the agent instructed to execute a payment instruction.
INGA	InstructingAgent	Settlement is done by the agent instructing and forwarding the payment to the next party in the payment chain.
COVE	CoverMethod	Settlement is done through a cover payment.
CLRG	ClearingSystem	Settlement is done through a payment clearing system.

1.4.1.10.2 SettlementAccount <SttlmAcct>*Presence:* [0..1]*Definition:* A specific purpose account used to post debit and credit entries as a result of the transaction.*Impacted by:* ✓ [C20 IdentificationOrProxyPresenceRule](#) ✓, [C19 IdentificationAndProxyGuideline](#)**SettlementAccount <SttlmAcct>** contains the following elements (see [CashAccount40](#) on page 99 for details)

Index	Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
		Identification <Id>	[0..1]	±		99
		Type <Tp>	[0..1]	±		100
		Currency <Ccy>	[0..1]	CodeSet		100
		Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		100
		Proxy <Prxy>	[0..1]	±		100

Constraints

- **IdentificationAndProxyGuideline**

If the account identification is not defined through a conventional identification such as an email address or a mobile number, then the proxy element should be used for the identification of the account.

- **IdentificationOrProxyPresenceRule**

Identification must be present or Proxy must be present. Both may be present.

Error handling:

- *Error severity:* Fatal
- *Error Code:* X00498
- *Error Text:* Missing account identification or account proxy.

1.4.1.10.3 ClearingSystem <ClrSys>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Specification of a pre-agreed offering between clearing agents or the channel through which the payment instruction is processed.

ClearingSystem <ClrSys> contains one of the following **ClearingSystemIdentification3Choice** elements

Index	Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		27
	Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		27

1.4.1.10.3.1 Code <Cd>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Infrastructure through which the payment instruction is processed, as published in an external clearing system identification code list.

Datatype: ExternalCashClearingSystem1Code on page 192

1.4.1.10.3.2 Proprietary <Prtry>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Clearing system identification in a proprietary form.

Datatype: Max35Text on page 220

1.4.1.10.4 InstructingReimbursementAgent <InstgRmbrsmntAgt>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Agent through which the instructing agent will reimburse the instructed agent.

Usage: If InstructingAgent and InstructedAgent have the same reimbursement agent, then only InstructingReimbursementAgent must be used.

InstructingReimbursementAgent <InstgRmbrsmntAgt> contains the following elements (see [BranchAndFinancialInstitutionIdentification8](#) on page 110 for details)

Index	Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
		FinancialInstitutionIdentification <FinInstnId>	[1..1]			111
		BICFI <BICFI>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		111
		ClearingSystemMemberIdentification <ClrSysMmbld>	[0..1]	±		112
		LEI <LEI>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		112
		Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		112
		PostalAddress <PstlAdr>	[0..1]	±		112
		Other <Othr>	[0..1]	±		113
		BranchIdentification <BrnchId>	[0..1]			114
		Identification <Id>	[0..1]	Text		114
		LEI <LEI>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		114
		Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		114
		PostalAddress <PstlAdr>	[0..1]	±		114

1.4.1.10.5 InstructingReimbursementAgentAccount <InstgRmbrsmntAgtAcct>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Unambiguous identification of the account of the instructing reimbursement agent account at its servicing agent in the payment chain.

Impacted by: ✓ [C20 IdentificationOrProxyPresenceRule](#) ✓, [C19 IdentificationAndProxyGuideline](#)

InstructingReimbursementAgentAccount <InstgRmbrsmntAgtAcct> contains the following elements (see [CashAccount40](#) on page 99 for details)

Index	Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
		Identification <Id>	[0..1]	±		99
		Type <Tp>	[0..1]	±		100
		Currency <Ccy>	[0..1]	CodeSet		100
		Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		100
		Proxy <Prxy>	[0..1]	±		100

Constraints

- **IdentificationAndProxyGuideline**

If the account identification is not defined through a conventional identification such as an email address or a mobile number, then the proxy element should be used for the identification of the account.

- **IdentificationOrProxyPresenceRule**

Identification must be present or Proxy must be present. Both may be present.

Error handling:

- *Error severity:* Fatal
- *Error Code:* X00498
- *Error Text:* Missing account identification or account proxy.

1.4.1.10.6 InstructedReimbursementAgent <InstdRmbrsmntAgt>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Agent at which the instructed agent will be reimbursed.

Usage: If InstructedReimbursementAgent contains a branch of the InstructedAgent, then the party in InstructedAgent will claim reimbursement from that branch/will be paid by that branch.

Usage: If InstructingAgent and InstructedAgent have the same reimbursement agent, then only InstructingReimbursementAgent must be used.

InstructedReimbursementAgent <InstdRmbrsmntAgt> contains the following elements (see [BranchAndFinancialInstitutionIdentification8](#) on page 110 for details)

Index	Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
		FinancialInstitutionIdentification <FinInstnId>	[1..1]			111
		BICFI <BICFI>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		111
		ClearingSystemMemberIdentification <ClrSysMmbld>	[0..1]	±		112
		LEI <LEI>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		112
		Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		112
		PostalAddress <PstlAdr>	[0..1]	±		112
		Other <Othr>	[0..1]	±		113
		BranchIdentification <BrnchId>	[0..1]			114
		Identification <Id>	[0..1]	Text		114
		LEI <LEI>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		114
		Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		114
		PostalAddress <PstlAdr>	[0..1]	±		114

1.4.1.10.7 InstructedReimbursementAgentAccount <InstdRmbrsmntAgtAcct>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Unambiguous identification of the account of the instructed reimbursement agent account at its servicing agent in the payment chain.

Impacted by: ✓ C20 IdentificationOrProxyPresenceRule ✓, C19 IdentificationAndProxyGuideline

InstructedReimbursementAgentAccount <InstdRmbrsmntAgtAcct> contains the following elements (see CashAccount40 on page 99 for details)

Index	Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
		Identification <Id>	[0..1]	±		99
		Type <Tp>	[0..1]	±		100
		Currency <Ccy>	[0..1]	CodeSet		100
		Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		100
		Proxy <Prxy>	[0..1]	±		100

Constraints

- **IdentificationAndProxyGuideline**

If the account identification is not defined through a conventional identification such as an email address or a mobile number, then the proxy element should be used for the identification of the account.

- **IdentificationOrProxyPresenceRule**

Identification must be present or Proxy must be present. Both may be present.

Error handling:

- *Error severity:* Fatal
- *Error Code:* X00498
- *Error Text:* Missing account identification or account proxy.

1.4.1.10.8 ThirdReimbursementAgent <ThrdRmbrsmntAgt>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Agent at which the instructed agent will be reimbursed.

Usage: If ThirdReimbursementAgent contains a branch of the InstructedAgent, then the party in InstructedAgent will claim reimbursement from that branch/will be paid by that branch.

ThirdReimbursementAgent <ThrdRmbrsmntAgt> contains the following elements (see [BranchAndFinancialInstitutionIdentification8](#) on page 110 for details)

Index	Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
		FinancialInstitutionIdentification <FinInstnId>	[1..1]			111
		BICFI <BICFI>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		111
		ClearingSystemMemberIdentification <ClrSysMmbld>	[0..1]	±		112
		LEI <LEI>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		112
		Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		112
		PostalAddress <PstlAdr>	[0..1]	±		112
		Other <Othr>	[0..1]	±		113
		BranchIdentification <BrnchId>	[0..1]			114
		Identification <Id>	[0..1]	Text		114
		LEI <LEI>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		114
		Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		114
		PostalAddress <PstlAdr>	[0..1]	±		114

1.4.1.10.9 ThirdReimbursementAgentAccount <ThrdRmbrsmntAgtAcct>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Unambiguous identification of the account of the third reimbursement agent account at its servicing agent in the payment chain.

Impacted by: ✓ [C20 IdentificationOrProxyPresenceRule](#) ✓, [C19 IdentificationAndProxyGuideline](#)

ThirdReimbursementAgentAccount <ThrdRmbrsmntAgtAcct> contains the following elements (see [CashAccount40](#) on page 99 for details)

Index	Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
		Identification <Id>	[0..1]	±		99
		Type <Tp>	[0..1]	±		100
		Currency <Ccy>	[0..1]	CodeSet		100
		Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		100
		Proxy <Prxy>	[0..1]	±		100

Constraints

- **IdentificationAndProxyGuideline**

If the account identification is not defined through a conventional identification such as an email address or a mobile number, then the proxy element should be used for the identification of the account.

- **IdentificationOrProxyPresenceRule**

Identification must be present or Proxy must be present. Both may be present.

Error handling:

- *Error severity:* Fatal
- *Error Code:* X00498
- *Error Text:* Missing account identification or account proxy.

1.4.1.11 InstructingAgent <InstgAgt>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Agent that instructs the next party in the chain to carry out the (set of) instruction(s).

Usage: The instructing agent is the party sending the reversal message and not the party that sent the original instruction that is being reversed.

InstructingAgent <InstgAgt> contains the following elements (see [BranchAndFinancialInstitutionIdentification8](#) on page 110 for details)

Index	Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
		FinancialInstitutionIdentification <FinInstnId>	[1..1]			111
		BICFI <BICFI>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		111
		ClearingSystemMemberIdentification <ClrSysMmbld>	[0..1]	±		112
		LEI <LEI>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		112
		Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		112
		PostalAddress <PstlAdr>	[0..1]	±		112
		Other <Othr>	[0..1]	±		113
		BranchIdentification <BrnchId>	[0..1]			114
		Identification <Id>	[0..1]	Text		114
		LEI <LEI>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		114
		Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		114
		PostalAddress <PstlAdr>	[0..1]	±		114

1.4.1.12 InstructedAgent <InstdAgt>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Agent that is instructed by the previous party in the chain to carry out the (set of) instruction(s).

Usage: The instructed agent is the party receiving the reversal message and not the party that received the original instruction that is being reversed.

InstructedAgent <InstdAgt> contains the following elements (see [BranchAndFinancialInstitutionIdentification8](#) on page 110 for details)

Index	Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
		FinancialInstitutionIdentification <FinInstnId>	[1..1]			111
		BICFI <BICFI>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		111
		ClearingSystemMemberIdentification <ClrSysMmbld>	[0..1]	±		112
		LEI <LEI>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		112
		Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		112
		PostalAddress <PstlAdr>	[0..1]	±		112
		Other <Othr>	[0..1]	±		113
		BranchIdentification <BrnchId>	[0..1]			114
		Identification <Id>	[0..1]	Text		114
		LEI <LEI>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		114
		Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		114
		PostalAddress <PstlAdr>	[0..1]	±		114

1.4.2 OriginalGroupInformation <OrgnlGrpInf>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Information concerning the original group of transactions, to which the message refers.

OriginalGroupInformation <OrgnlGrpInf> contains the following **OriginalGroupHeader20** elements

Index	Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
		OriginalMessageIdentification <OrgnlMsgId>	[1..1]	Text		34
		OriginalMessageNameIdentification <OrgnlMsgNmId>	[1..1]	Text		34
		OriginalCreationDateTime <OrgnlCreDtTm>	[0..1]	DateTime		34
		ReversalReasonInformation <RvslRsnInf>	[0..*]			34
		Originator <Orgtr>	[0..1]	±		35
		Reason <Rsn>	[0..1]			36
	{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		37
	Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		37
		AdditionalInformation <AddtlInf>	[0..*]	Text		37

1.4.2.1 OriginalMessageIdentification <OrgnlMsgId>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Point to point reference, as assigned by the original instructing party, to unambiguously identify the original message.

Datatype: Max35Text on page 220

1.4.2.2 OriginalMessageNameIdentification <OrgnlMsgNmId>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Specifies the original message name identifier to which the message refers.

Datatype: Max35Text on page 220

1.4.2.3 OriginalCreationDateTime <OrgnlCreDtTm>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Date and time at which the original message was created.

Datatype: ISODateTime on page 214

1.4.2.4 ReversalReasonInformation <RvslRsnInf>

Presence: [0..*]

Definition: Provides detailed information on the reversal reason.

ReversalReasonInformation <RvslRsnInf> contains the following **PaymentReversalReason10** elements

Index	Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
		Originator <Orgtr>	[0..1]	±		35
		Reason <Rsn>	[0..1]			36
	{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		37
	Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		37
		AdditionalInformation <AddtlInf>	[0..*]	Text		37

1.4.2.4.1 Originator <Orgtr>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Party that issues the reversal.

Originator <Orgtr> contains the following elements (see [PartyIdentification272](#) on page 125 for details)

Index	Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
		Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		126
		PostalAddress <PstlAdr>	[0..1]	±		127
		Identification <Id>	[0..1]			127
	{Or	OrganisationIdentification <OrgId>	[1..1]			128
		AnyBIC <AnyBIC>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		129
		LEI <LEI>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		129
		Other <Othr>	[0..*]			129
		Identification <Id>	[1..1]	Text		129
		SchemeName <SchmeNm>	[0..1]			130
	{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		130
	Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		130
		Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		130
	Or}	PrivateIdentification <PrvtId>	[1..1]			130
		DateAndPlaceOfBirth <DtAndPlcOfBirth>	[0..1]			131
		BirthDate <BirthDt>	[1..1]	Date		131
		ProvinceOfBirth <PrvcOfBirth>	[0..1]	Text		131
		CityOfBirth <CityOfBirth>	[1..1]	Text		131
		CountryOfBirth <CtryOfBirth>	[1..1]	CodeSet		132
		Other <Othr>	[0..*]			132
		Identification <Id>	[1..1]	Text		132
		SchemeName <SchmeNm>	[0..1]			132
	{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		132
	Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		133
		Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		133
		CountryOfResidence <CtryOfRes>	[0..1]	CodeSet		133
		ContactDetails <CtctDtls>	[0..1]	±		133

1.4.2.4.2 Reason <Rsn>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Specifies the reason for the reversal.

Reason <Rsn> contains one of the following **ReversalReason4Choice** elements

Index	Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		37
	Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		37

1.4.2.4.2.1 Code <Cd>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Reason for the reversal, as published in an external reason code list.

Datatype: ExternalReversalReason1Code on page 203

1.4.2.4.2.2 Proprietary <Prtry>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Reason for the reversal, in a proprietary form.

Datatype: Max35Text on page 220

1.4.2.4.3 AdditionalInformation <AddtlInf>

Presence: [0..*]

Definition: Further details on the reversal reason.

Datatype: Max105Text on page 218

1.4.3 TransactionInformation <TxInf>

Presence: [0..*]

Definition: Information concerning the original transactions, to which the reversal message refers.

Impacted by: ✓ C7 ChargesInformationAndReversedInstructedAmountRule ✓,
 ✓ C28 ReversedInstructedAmountAndExchangeRate1Rule ✓, ✓ C29
ReversedInstructedAmountAndExchangeRate2Rule ✓

TransactionInformation <TxInf> contains the following **PaymentTransaction149** elements

Index	Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
		ReversalIdentification <RvsIld>	[0..1]	Text		42
		OriginalGroupInformation <OrgnlGrpInf>	[0..1]	±		42
		OriginalInstructionIdentification <OrgnlInstrId>	[0..1]	Text		42
		OriginalEndToEndIdentification <OrgnlEndToEndId>	[0..1]	Text		43
		OriginalTransactionIdentification <OrgnlTxId>	[0..1]	Text		43
		OriginalUETR <OrgnlUETR>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		43
		OriginalClearingSystemReference <OrgnlClrSysRef>	[0..1]	Text		43
		OriginalInterbankSettlementAmount <OrgnlIntrBkSttlmAmt>	[0..1]	Amount	✓C2, ✓C11	43
		ReversedInterbankSettlementAmount <RvsdIntrBkSttlmAmt>	[1..1]	Amount	✓C1, ✓C10	44
		InterbankSettlementDate <IntrBkSttlmDt>	[0..1]	Date		45
		SettlementPriority <SttlmPrty>	[0..1]	CodeSet		45
		SettlementTimeIndication <SttlmTmIndctn>	[0..1]			45
		DebitDateTime <DbtDtTm>	[0..1]	DateTime		45
		CreditDateTime <CdtDtTm>	[0..1]	DateTime		46
		ReversedInstructedAmount <RvsdInstdAmt>	[0..1]	Amount	✓C2, ✓C11	46
		ExchangeRate <XchgRate>	[0..1]	Rate		46
		CompensationAmount <CompstnAmt>	[0..1]	Amount	✓C2, ✓C11	47
		ChargeBearer <ChrgBr>	[0..1]	CodeSet		47
		ChargesInformation <ChrgsInf>	[0..*]			48
		Amount <Amt>	[1..1]	Amount	✓C2, ✓C11	48
		Agent <Agt>	[1..1]	±		49
		Type <Tp>	[0..1]			49
	{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		50
	Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	±		50
		InstructingAgent <InstgAgt>	[0..1]	±		50
		InstructedAgent <InstdAgt>	[0..1]	±		51
		ReversalReasonInformation <RvsIRsnInf>	[0..*]			51
		Originator <Orgtr>	[0..1]	±		52

Index	Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
		Reason <Rsn>	[0..1]			53
	{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		53
	Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		53
		AdditionalInformation <AddtlInf>	[0..*]	Text		53
		OriginalTransactionReference <OrgnlTxRef>	[0..1]			53
		InterbankSettlementAmount <IntrBkSttlmAmt>	[0..1]	Amount	✓C2, ✓C11	56
		Amount <Amt>	[0..1]	±		57
		InterbankSettlementDate <IntrBkSttlmDt>	[0..1]	Date		57
		RequestedCollectionDate <ReqdColltnDt>	[0..1]	Date		57
		RequestedExecutionDate <ReqdExctnDt>	[0..1]	±		57
		CreditorSchemeIdentification <CdtrSchmeld>	[0..1]	±		58
		SettlementInformation <SttlmInf>	[0..1]		✓C22, ✓C24, ✓C30, ✓C31, ✓C32, ✓C33, ✓C36, ✓C37	59
		SettlementMethod <SttlmMtd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		62
		SettlementAccount <SttlmAcct>	[0..1]	±	✓C20, C19	62
		ClearingSystem <ClrSys>	[0..1]			63
	{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		63
	Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		63
		InstructingReimbursementAgent <InstgRmbrsmntAgt>	[0..1]	±		63
		InstructingReimbursementAgentAccount <InstgRmbrsmntAgtAcct>	[0..1]	±	✓C20, C19	64
		InstructedReimbursementAgent <InstdRmbrsmntAgt>	[0..1]	±		65
		InstructedReimbursementAgentAccount <InstdRmbrsmntAgtAcct>	[0..1]	±	✓C20, C19	66
		ThirdReimbursementAgent <ThrdRmbrsmntAgt>	[0..1]	±		66
		ThirdReimbursementAgentAccount <ThrdRmbrsmntAgtAcct>	[0..1]	±	✓C20, C19	67
		PaymentTypeInformation <PmtTplnf>	[0..1]	±		68
		PaymentMethod <PmtMtd>	[0..1]	CodeSet		68

Index	Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
		MandateRelatedInformation <MndtRltdInf>	[0..1]			69
	{Or	DirectDebitMandate <DrctDbtMndt>	[0..1]		✓C3, ✓C4	71
		MandateIdentification <MndtId>	[0..1]	Text		73
		DateOfSignature <DtOfSgntr>	[0..1]	Date		73
		AmendmentIndicator <AmdmntInd>	[0..1]	Indicator		73
		AmendmentInformationDetails <AmdmntInfDtls>	[0..1]			73
		OriginalMandateIdentification <OrgnlMndtId>	[0..1]	Text		74
		OriginalCreditorSchemeIdentification <OrgnlCdtrSchmId>	[0..1]	±		74
		OriginalCreditorAgent <OrgnlCdtrAgt>	[0..1]	±		75
		OriginalCreditorAgentAccount <OrgnlCdtrAgtAcct>	[0..1]	±	✓C20, C19	76
		OriginalDebtor <OrgnlDbtr>	[0..1]	±		77
		OriginalDebtorAccount <OrgnlDbtrAcct>	[0..1]	±	✓C20, C19	78
		OriginalDebtorAgent <OrgnlDbtrAgt>	[0..1]	±		79
		OriginalDebtorAgentAccount <OrgnlDbtrAgtAcct>	[0..1]	±	✓C20, C19	80
		OriginalFinalCollectionDate <OrgnlFnlColltnDt>	[0..1]	Date		81
		OriginalFrequency <OrgnlFrqcy>	[0..1]	±		81
		OriginalReason <OrgnlRsn>	[0..1]			81
	{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		82
	Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		82
		OriginalTrackingDays <OrgnlTrckgDays>	[0..1]	Text		82
		ElectronicSignature <ElctrcSgntr>	[0..1]	Text		82
		FirstCollectionDate <FrstColltnDt>	[0..1]	Date		82
		FinalCollectionDate <FnlColltnDt>	[0..1]	Date		82
		Frequency <Frqcy>	[0..1]	±		82
		Reason <Rsn>	[0..1]			83
	{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		83
	Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		83
		TrackingDays <TrckgDays>	[0..1]	Text		83
	Or}	CreditTransferMandate <CdtTrfMndt>	[0..1]	±		83

Index	Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
		RemittanceInformation <RmtInf>	[0..1]	±		84
		UltimateDebtor <UltmtDbtr>	[0..1]			84
	{Or	Party <Pty>	[1..1]	±		84
	Or}	Agent <Agt>	[1..1]	±		85
		Debtor <Dbtr>	[0..1]			86
	{Or	Party <Pty>	[1..1]	±		86
	Or}	Agent <Agt>	[1..1]	±		87
		DebtorAccount <DbtrAcct>	[0..1]	±	✓C20, C19	88
		DebtorAgent <DbtrAgt>	[0..1]	±		89
		DebtorAgentAccount <DbtrAgtAcct>	[0..1]	±	✓C20, C19	89
		CreditorAgent <CdtrAgt>	[0..1]	±		90
		CreditorAgentAccount <CdtrAgtAcct>	[0..1]	±	✓C20, C19	91
		Creditor <Cdtr>	[0..1]			92
	{Or	Party <Pty>	[1..1]	±		92
	Or}	Agent <Agt>	[1..1]	±		93
		CreditorAccount <CdtrAcct>	[0..1]	±	✓C20, C19	94
		UltimateCreditor <UltmtCdtr>	[0..1]			95
	{Or	Party <Pty>	[1..1]	±		95
	Or}	Agent <Agt>	[1..1]	±		96
		Purpose <Purp>	[0..1]	±		97
		SupplementaryData <SplmtryData>	[0..*]	±	C35	97

Constraints

- **ChargesInformationAndReversedInstructedAmountRule**

If ChargesInformation is present, then ReversedInstructedAmount must be present.

Error handling:

- Error severity: Fatal
- Error Code: X00048

- *Error Text:* Invalid message content for instructed amount when charges information is present.

- **ReversedInstructedAmountAndExchangeRate1Rule**

If ReversedInstructedAmount is present and the currency is different from the currency in InterbankSettlementAmount, then ExchangeRate must be present.

Error handling:

- *Error severity:* Fatal
- *Error Code:* X00049
- *Error Text:* Invalid message content for exchange rate when instructed amount is present.

- **ReversedInstructedAmountAndExchangeRate2Rule**

If ReversedInstructedAmount is present and the currency is the same as the currency in InterbankSettlementAmount, then ExchangeRate is not allowed.

Error handling:

- *Error severity:* Fatal
- *Error Code:* X00050
- *Error Text:* Invalid message content for exchange rate when instructed amount is not present.

1.4.3.1 ReversalIdentification <RvsId>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Unique identification, as assigned by an instructing party for an instructed party, to unambiguously identify the reversed transaction.

Usage: The instructing party is the party sending the reversal message and not the party that sent the original instruction that is being reversed.

Datatype: [Max35Text](#) on page 220

1.4.3.2 OriginalGroupInformation <OrgnlGrpInf>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Provides information on the original message.

OriginalGroupInformation <OrgnlGrpInf> contains the following elements (see [OriginalGroupInformation29](#) on page 122 for details)

Index	Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
		OriginalMessageIdentification <OrgnlMsgId>	[1..1]	Text		122
		OriginalMessageNameIdentification <OrgnlMsgNmId>	[1..1]	Text		122
		OriginalCreationDateTime <OrgnlCreDtTm>	[0..1]	DateTime		122

1.4.3.3 OriginalInstructionIdentification <OrgnlInstrId>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Unique identification, as assigned by the original instructing party for the original instructed party, to unambiguously identify the original instruction.

Datatype: Max35Text on page 220

1.4.3.4 OriginalEndToEndIdentification <OrgnlEndToEndId>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Unique identification, as assigned by the original initiating party, to unambiguously identify the original transaction.

Datatype: Max35Text on page 220

1.4.3.5 OriginalTransactionIdentification <OrgnlTxId>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Unique identification, as assigned by the original first instructing agent, to unambiguously identify the transaction.

Datatype: Max35Text on page 220

1.4.3.6 OriginalUETR <OrgnlUETR>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Universally unique identifier to provide the original end-to-end reference of a payment transaction.

Datatype: UUIDv4Identifier on page 216

1.4.3.7 OriginalClearingSystemReference <OrgnlClrSysRef>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Unique reference, as assigned by the original clearing system, to unambiguously identify the original instruction.

Datatype: Max35Text on page 220

1.4.3.8 OriginalInterbankSettlementAmount <OrgnlIntrBkSttlmAmt>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Amount of money moved between the instructing agent and the instructed agent, as provided in the original instruction.

Impacted by: ✓C2 ActiveOrHistoricCurrency ✓, ✓C11 CurrencyAmount ✓

Datatype: ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyAndAmount on page 184

Constraints

- **ActiveOrHistoricCurrency**

The Currency Code must be registered, or have already been registered. Valid active or historic currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and may be or not be withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

Error handling:

- *Error severity:* Fatal
- *Error Code:* D00006
- *Error Text:* Invalid currency code.

- **CurrencyAmount**

The number of fractional digits (or minor unit of currency) must comply with ISO 4217.

Note: The decimal separator is a dot.

Error handling:

- *Error severity:* Fatal
- *Error Code:* D00007
- *Error Text:* Invalid currency code or too many decimal digits.

1.4.3.9 ReversedInterbankSettlementAmount <RvsdIntrBkSttlmAmt>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Amount of money to be moved between the instructing agent and the instructed agent in the reversed instruction.

Impacted by: ✓ C1 ActiveCurrency ✓, ✓ C10 CurrencyAmount ✓

Datatype: ActiveCurrencyAndAmount on page 183

Constraints

- **ActiveCurrency**

The currency code must be a valid active currency code, not yet withdrawn on the day the message containing the currency is exchanged. Valid active currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and are not yet withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

Error handling:

- *Error severity:* Fatal
- *Error Code:* D00005
- *Error Text:* Invalid currency code

- **CurrencyAmount**

The number of fractional digits (or minor unit of currency) must comply with ISO 4217.

Note: The decimal separator is a dot.

Error handling:

- *Error severity:* Fatal
- *Error Code:* D00007
- *Error Text:* Invalid currency code or too many decimal digits.

1.4.3.10 InterbankSettlementDate <IntrBkSttlmDt>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Date on which the amount of money ceases to be available to the agent that owes it and when the amount of money becomes available to the agent to which it is due.

Usage: The InterbankSettlementDate is the interbank settlement date of the reversal message, and not of the original instruction.

Datatype: ISODate on page 214

1.4.3.11 SettlementPriority <SttlmPrty>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Indicator of the urgency or order of importance that the instructing party would like the instructed party to apply to the processing of the settlement instruction.

Usage: the SettlementPriority is the settlement priority of the reversal message, and not of the original instruction.

Datatype: Priority3Code on page 209

CodeName	Name	Definition
URGT	Urgent	Priority level is urgent (highest priority possible).
HIGH	High	Priority level is high.
NORM	Normal	Priority level is normal.

1.4.3.12 SettlementTimeIndication <SttlmTmIndctn>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Provides information on the occurred settlement time of the payment transaction.

SettlementTimeIndication <SttlmTmIndctn> contains the following **SettlementDateTimeIndication1** elements

Index	Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
		DebitDateTime <DbtDtTm>	[0..1]	DateTime		45
		CreditDateTime <CdtDtTm>	[0..1]	DateTime		46

1.4.3.12.1 DebitDateTime <DbtDtTm>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Date and time at which a payment has been debited at the transaction administrator. In the case of TARGET, the date and time at which the payment has been debited at the central bank, expressed in Central European Time (CET).

Datatype: ISODatetime on page 214

1.4.3.12.2 CreditDateTime <CdtDtTm>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Date and time at which a payment has been credited at the transaction administrator. In the case of TARGET, the date and time at which the payment has been credited at the receiving central bank, expressed in Central European Time (CET).

Datatype: ISODatetime on page 214

1.4.3.13 ReversedInstructedAmount <RvstdInstAmt>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Amount of money to be moved between the debtor and the creditor, before deduction of charges, in the reversed transaction.

Usage: This amount has to be transported unchanged through the transaction chain.

Impacted by: ✓C2 ActiveOrHistoricCurrency ✓, ✓C11 CurrencyAmount ✓

Datatype: ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyAndAmount on page 184

Constraints

- **ActiveOrHistoricCurrency**

The Currency Code must be registered, or have already been registered. Valid active or historic currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and may be or not be withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

Error handling:

- *Error severity:* Fatal
- *Error Code:* D00006
- *Error Text:* Invalid currency code.

- **CurrencyAmount**

The number of fractional digits (or minor unit of currency) must comply with ISO 4217.

Note: The decimal separator is a dot.

Error handling:

- *Error severity:* Fatal
- *Error Code:* D00007
- *Error Text:* Invalid currency code or too many decimal digits.

1.4.3.14 ExchangeRate <XchgRate>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Factor used to convert an amount from one currency into another. This reflects the price at which one currency was bought with another currency.

Datatype: BaseOneRate on page 217

1.4.3.15 CompensationAmount <CompstnAmt>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Amount of money asked or paid as compensation for the processing of the instruction.

Impacted by: ✓C2 ActiveOrHistoricCurrency ✓, ✓C11 CurrencyAmount ✓

Datatype: ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyAndAmount on page 184

Constraints

- **ActiveOrHistoricCurrency**

The Currency Code must be registered, or have already been registered. Valid active or historic currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and may be or not be withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

Error handling:

- *Error severity:* Fatal
- *Error Code:* D00006
- *Error Text:* Invalid currency code.

- **CurrencyAmount**

The number of fractional digits (or minor unit of currency) must comply with ISO 4217.

Note: The decimal separator is a dot.

Error handling:

- *Error severity:* Fatal
- *Error Code:* D00007
- *Error Text:* Invalid currency code or too many decimal digits.

1.4.3.16 ChargeBearer <ChrgBr>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Specifies if the creditor and/or debtor will bear the charges associated with the processing of the payment transaction.

Usage: The ChargeBearer applies to the reversal message, not to the original instruction.

Datatype: ChargeBearerType1Code on page 188

CodeName	Name	Definition
DEBT	BorneByDebtor	All transaction charges are to be borne by the debtor.
CRED	BorneByCreditor	All transaction charges are to be borne by the creditor.
SHAR	Shared	In a credit transfer context, means that transaction charges on the sender side are to be borne by the debtor, transaction charges on the receiver side are to be borne by the creditor.

CodeName	Name	Definition
		In a direct debit context, means that transaction charges on the sender side are to be borne by the creditor, transaction charges on the receiver side are to be borne by the debtor.
SLEV	FollowingServiceLevel	Charges are to be applied following the rules agreed in the service level and/or scheme.

1.4.3.17 ChargesInformation <ChrgsInf>

Presence: [0..*]

Definition: Provides information on the charges to be paid by the charge bearer(s) related to the processing of the reversal transaction.

ChargesInformation <ChrgsInf> contains the following **Charges16** elements

Index	Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
		Amount <Amt>	[1..1]	Amount	✓C2, ✓C11	48
		Agent <Agt>	[1..1]	±		49
		Type <Tp>	[0..1]			49
	{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		50
	Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	±		50

1.4.3.17.1 Amount <Amt>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Transaction charges to be paid by the charge bearer.

Impacted by: ✓C2 ActiveOrHistoricCurrency ✓, ✓C11 CurrencyAmount ✓

Datatype: ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyAndAmount on page 184

Constraints

- **ActiveOrHistoricCurrency**

The Currency Code must be registered, or have already been registered. Valid active or historic currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and may be or not be withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

Error handling:

- *Error severity:* Fatal
- *Error Code:* D00006
- *Error Text:* Invalid currency code.

- **CurrencyAmount**

The number of fractional digits (or minor unit of currency) must comply with ISO 4217.

Note: The decimal separator is a dot.

Error handling:

- Error severity: Fatal
- Error Code: D00007
- Error Text: Invalid currency code or too many decimal digits.

1.4.3.17.2 Agent <Agt>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Agent that takes the transaction charges or to which the transaction charges are due.

Agent <Agt> contains the following elements (see [BranchAndFinancialInstitutionIdentification8](#) on page 110 for details)

Index	Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
		FinancialInstitutionIdentification <FinInstnId>	[1..1]			111
		BICFI <BICFI>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		111
		ClearingSystemMemberIdentification <ClrSysMmbld>	[0..1]	±		112
		LEI <LEI>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		112
		Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		112
		PostalAddress <PstlAdr>	[0..1]	±		112
		Other <Othr>	[0..1]	±		113
		BranchIdentification <BrnchId>	[0..1]			114
		Identification <Id>	[0..1]	Text		114
		LEI <LEI>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		114
		Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		114
		PostalAddress <PstlAdr>	[0..1]	±		114

1.4.3.17.3 Type <Tp>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Defines the type of charges.

Type <Tp> contains one of the following **ChargeType3Choice** elements

Index	Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		50
	Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	±		50

1.4.3.17.3.1 Code <Cd>*Presence:* [1..1]*Definition:* Charge type, in a coded form.*Datatype:* [ExternalChargeType1Code](#) on page 193**1.4.3.17.3.2 Proprietary <Prtry>***Presence:* [1..1]*Definition:* Type of charge in a proprietary form, as defined by the issuer.**Proprietary <Prtry>** contains the following elements (see [GenericIdentification3](#) on page 119 for details)

Index	Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
		Identification </d>	[1..1]	Text		119
		Issuer </ssr>	[0..1]	Text		119

1.4.3.18 InstructingAgent <InstgAgt>*Presence:* [0..1]*Definition:* Agent that instructs the next party in the chain to carry out the (set of) instruction(s).*Usage:* The instructing agent is the party sending the reversal message and not the party that sent the original instruction that is being reversed.**InstructingAgent <InstgAgt>** contains the following elements (see [BranchAndFinancialInstitutionIdentification8](#) on page 110 for details)

Index	Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
		FinancialInstitutionIdentification <FinInstnId>	[1..1]			111
		BICFI <BICFI>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		111
		ClearingSystemMemberIdentification <ClrSysMmbld>	[0..1]	±		112
		LEI <LEI>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		112
		Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		112
		PostalAddress <PstlAdr>	[0..1]	±		112
		Other <Othr>	[0..1]	±		113
		BranchIdentification <BrnchId>	[0..1]			114
		Identification <Id>	[0..1]	Text		114
		LEI <LEI>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		114
		Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		114
		PostalAddress <PstlAdr>	[0..1]	±		114

1.4.3.19 InstructedAgent <InstdAgt>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Agent that is instructed by the previous party in the chain to carry out the (set of) instruction(s).

Usage: The instructed agent is the party receiving the reversal message and not the party that received the original instruction that is being reversed.

InstructedAgent <InstdAgt> contains the following elements (see [BranchAndFinancialInstitutionIdentification8](#) on page 110 for details)

Index	Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
		FinancialInstitutionIdentification <FinInstnId>	[1..1]			111
		BICFI <BICFI>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		111
		ClearingSystemMemberIdentification <ClrSysMmbld>	[0..1]	±		112
		LEI <LEI>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		112
		Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		112
		PostalAddress <PstlAdr>	[0..1]	±		112
		Other <Othr>	[0..1]	±		113
		BranchIdentification <BrnchId>	[0..1]			114
		Identification <Id>	[0..1]	Text		114
		LEI <LEI>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		114
		Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		114
		PostalAddress <PstlAdr>	[0..1]	±		114

1.4.3.20 ReversalReasonInformation <RvsIRsnInf>

Presence: [0..*]

Definition: Provides detailed information on the reversal reason.

ReversalReasonInformation <RvsIRsnInf> contains the following **PaymentReversalReason10** elements

Index	Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
		Originator <Orgtr>	[0..1]	±		52
		Reason <Rsn>	[0..1]			53
	{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		53
	Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		53
		AdditionalInformation <AddtlInf>	[0..*]	Text		53

1.4.3.20.1 Originator <Orgtr>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Party that issues the reversal.

Originator <Orgtr> contains the following elements (see [PartyIdentification272](#) on page 125 for details)

Index	Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
		Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		126
		PostalAddress <PstlAdr>	[0..1]	±		127
		Identification <Id>	[0..1]			127
	{Or	OrganisationIdentification <OrgId>	[1..1]			128
		AnyBIC <AnyBIC>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		129
		LEI <LEI>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		129
		Other <Othr>	[0..*]			129
		Identification <Id>	[1..1]	Text		129
		SchemeName <SchmeNm>	[0..1]			130
	{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		130
	Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		130
		Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		130
	Or}	PrivateIdentification <PrvtId>	[1..1]			130
		DateAndPlaceOfBirth <DtAndPlcOfBirth>	[0..1]			131
		BirthDate <BirthDt>	[1..1]	Date		131
		ProvinceOfBirth <PrvcOfBirth>	[0..1]	Text		131
		CityOfBirth <CityOfBirth>	[1..1]	Text		131
		CountryOfBirth <CtryOfBirth>	[1..1]	CodeSet		132
		Other <Othr>	[0..*]			132
		Identification <Id>	[1..1]	Text		132
		SchemeName <SchmeNm>	[0..1]			132
	{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		132
	Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		133
		Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		133
		CountryOfResidence <CtryOfRes>	[0..1]	CodeSet		133
		ContactDetails <CtctDtls>	[0..1]	±		133

1.4.3.20.2 Reason <Rsn>*Presence:* [0..1]*Definition:* Specifies the reason for the reversal.**Reason <Rsn>** contains one of the following **ReversalReason4Choice** elements

Index	Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		53
	Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		53

1.4.3.20.2.1 Code <Cd>*Presence:* [1..1]*Definition:* Reason for the reversal, as published in an external reason code list.*Datatype:* ExternalReversalReason1Code on page 203**1.4.3.20.2.2 Proprietary <Prtry>***Presence:* [1..1]*Definition:* Reason for the reversal, in a proprietary form.*Datatype:* Max35Text on page 220**1.4.3.20.3 AdditionalInformation <AddtlInf>***Presence:* [0..*]*Definition:* Further details on the reversal reason.*Datatype:* Max105Text on page 218**1.4.3.21 OriginalTransactionReference <OrgnlTxRef>***Presence:* [0..1]*Definition:* Key elements used to identify the original transaction that is being referred to.

OriginalTransactionReference <OrgnlTxRef> contains the following
OriginalTransactionReference42 elements

Index	Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
		InterbankSettlementAmount <IntrBkSttlmAmt>	[0..1]	Amount	✓C2, ✓C11	56
		Amount <Amt>	[0..1]	±		57
		InterbankSettlementDate <IntrBkSttlmDt>	[0..1]	Date		57
		RequestedCollectionDate <ReqdColltnDt>	[0..1]	Date		57
		RequestedExecutionDate <ReqdExctnDt>	[0..1]	±		57
		CreditorSchemeIdentification <CdtrSchmeld>	[0..1]	±		58
		SettlementInformation <SttlmInf>	[0..1]		✓C22, ✓C24, ✓C30, ✓C31, ✓C32, ✓C33, ✓C36, ✓C37	59
		SettlementMethod <SttlmMtd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		62
		SettlementAccount <SttlmAcct>	[0..1]	±	✓C20, C19	62
		ClearingSystem <ClrSys>	[0..1]			63
	{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		63
	Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		63
		InstructingReimbursementAgent <InstgRmbrsmntAgt>	[0..1]	±		63
		InstructingReimbursementAgentAccount <InstgRmbrsmntAgtAcct>	[0..1]	±	✓C20, C19	64
		InstructedReimbursementAgent <InstdRmbrsmntAgt>	[0..1]	±		65
		InstructedReimbursementAgentAccount <InstdRmbrsmntAgtAcct>	[0..1]	±	✓C20, C19	66
		ThirdReimbursementAgent <ThrdRmbrsmntAgt>	[0..1]	±		66
		ThirdReimbursementAgentAccount <ThrdRmbrsmntAgtAcct>	[0..1]	±	✓C20, C19	67
		PaymentTypeInformation <PmtTplnf>	[0..1]	±		68
		PaymentMethod <PmtMtd>	[0..1]	CodeSet		68
		MandateRelatedInformation <MndtRltdInf>	[0..1]			69
	{Or	DirectDebitMandate <DrctDbtMndt>	[0..1]		✓C3, ✓C4	71
		MandateIdentification <MndtId>	[0..1]	Text		73

Index	Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
		DateOfSignature <DtOfSgntr>	[0..1]	Date		73
		AmendmentIndicator <AmdmntInd>	[0..1]	Indicator		73
		AmendmentInformationDetails <AmdmntInfDtls>	[0..1]			73
		OriginalMandateIdentification <OrgnlMndtId>	[0..1]	Text		74
		OriginalCreditorSchemeIdentification <OrgnlCdtrSchmId>	[0..1]	±		74
		OriginalCreditorAgent <OrgnlCdtrAgt>	[0..1]	±		75
		OriginalCreditorAgentAccount <OrgnlCdtrAgtAcct>	[0..1]	±	✓C20, C19	76
		OriginalDebtor <OrgnlDbtr>	[0..1]	±		77
		OriginalDebtorAccount <OrgnlDbtrAcct>	[0..1]	±	✓C20, C19	78
		OriginalDebtorAgent <OrgnlDbtrAgt>	[0..1]	±		79
		OriginalDebtorAgentAccount <OrgnlDbtrAgtAcct>	[0..1]	±	✓C20, C19	80
		OriginalFinalCollectionDate <OrgnlFnlColltnDt>	[0..1]	Date		81
		OriginalFrequency <OrgnlFrqcy>	[0..1]	±		81
		OriginalReason <OrgnlRsn>	[0..1]			81
	{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		82
	Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		82
		OriginalTrackingDays <OrgnlTrckgDays>	[0..1]	Text		82
		ElectronicSignature <ElctrncSgntr>	[0..1]	Text		82
		FirstCollectionDate <FrstColltnDt>	[0..1]	Date		82
		FinalCollectionDate <FnlColltnDt>	[0..1]	Date		82
		Frequency <Frqcy>	[0..1]	±		82
		Reason <Rsn>	[0..1]			83
	{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		83
	Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		83
		TrackingDays <TrckgDays>	[0..1]	Text		83
	Or}	CreditTransferMandate <CdtTrfMndt>	[0..1]	±		83
		RemittanceInformation <RmtInf>	[0..1]	±		84
		UltimateDebtor <UltmtDbtr>	[0..1]			84
	{Or	Party <Pty>	[1..1]	±		84

Index	Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	Or}	Agent <Agt>	[1..1]	±		85
		Debtor <Dbtr>	[0..1]			86
	{Or	Party <Pty>	[1..1]	±		86
	Or}	Agent <Agt>	[1..1]	±		87
		DebtorAccount <DbtrAcct>	[0..1]	±	✓C20, C19	88
		DebtorAgent <DbtrAgt>	[0..1]	±		89
		DebtorAgentAccount <DbtrAgtAcct>	[0..1]	±	✓C20, C19	89
		CreditorAgent <CdtrAgt>	[0..1]	±		90
		CreditorAgentAccount <CdtrAgtAcct>	[0..1]	±	✓C20, C19	91
		Creditor <Cdtr>	[0..1]			92
	{Or	Party <Pty>	[1..1]	±		92
	Or}	Agent <Agt>	[1..1]	±		93
		CreditorAccount <CdtrAcct>	[0..1]	±	✓C20, C19	94
		UltimateCreditor <UltmtCdtr>	[0..1]			95
	{Or	Party <Pty>	[1..1]	±		95
	Or}	Agent <Agt>	[1..1]	±		96
		Purpose <Purp>	[0..1]	±		97

1.4.3.21.1 InterbankSettlementAmount <IntrBkSttlmAmt>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Amount of money moved between the instructing agent and the instructed agent.

Impacted by: ✓C2 ActiveOrHistoricCurrency ✓, ✓C11 CurrencyAmount ✓

Datatype: ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyAndAmount on page 184

Constraints

- **ActiveOrHistoricCurrency**

The Currency Code must be registered, or have already been registered. Valid active or historic currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and may be or not be withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

Error handling:

- *Error severity:* Fatal
- *Error Code:* D00006

– *Error Text:* Invalid currency code.

- **CurrencyAmount**

The number of fractional digits (or minor unit of currency) must comply with ISO 4217.

Note: The decimal separator is a dot.

Error handling:

– *Error severity:* Fatal

– *Error Code:* D00007

– *Error Text:* Invalid currency code or too many decimal digits.

1.4.3.21.2 Amount <Amt>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Amount of money to be moved between the debtor and creditor, before deduction of charges, expressed in the currency as ordered by the initiating party.

Amount <Amt> contains one of the following elements (see [AmountType4Choice](#) on page 104 for details)

Index	Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	{Or	InstructedAmount <InstdAmt>	[1..1]	Amount		104
	Or}	EquivalentAmount <EqvtAmt>	[1..1]			104
		Amount <Amt>	[1..1]	Amount		104
		CurrencyOfTransfer <CcyOfTrf>	[1..1]	CodeSet		104

1.4.3.21.3 InterbankSettlementDate <IntrBkSttlmDt>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Date on which the amount of money ceases to be available to the agent that owes it and when the amount of money becomes available to the agent to which it is due.

Datatype: [ISODate](#) on page 214

1.4.3.21.4 RequestedCollectionDate <ReqdColltnDt>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Date and time at which the creditor requests that the amount of money is to be collected from the debtor.

Datatype: [ISODate](#) on page 214

1.4.3.21.5 RequestedExecutionDate <ReqdExctnDt>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Date at which the initiating party requests the clearing agent to process the payment.

Usage: This is the date on which the debtor's account is to be debited. If payment by cheque, the date when the cheque must be generated by the bank.

RequestedExecutionDate <ReqdExctnDt> contains one of the following elements (see [DateAndDateTime2Choice](#) on page 105 for details)

Index	Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	{Or	Date <Dt>	[1..1]	Date		105
	Or}	DateTime <DtTm>	[1..1]	DateTime		105

1.4.3.21.6 CreditorSchemelIdentification <CdtrSchmeld>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Credit party that signs the mandate.

CreditorSchemeIdentification <CdtrSchmld> contains the following elements (see PartyIdentification272 on page 125 for details)

Index	Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
		Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		126
		PostalAddress <PstlAdr>	[0..1]	±		127
		Identification <Id>	[0..1]			127
	{Or	OrganisationIdentification <OrgId>	[1..1]			128
		AnyBIC <AnyBIC>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		129
		LEI <LEI>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		129
		Other <Othr>	[0..*]			129
		Identification <Id>	[1..1]	Text		129
		SchemeName <SchmeNm>	[0..1]			130
	{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		130
	Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		130
		Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		130
	Or}	PrivateIdentification <PrvtId>	[1..1]			130
		DateAndPlaceOfBirth <DtAndPlcOfBirth>	[0..1]			131
		BirthDate <BirthDt>	[1..1]	Date		131
		ProvinceOfBirth <PrvcOfBirth>	[0..1]	Text		131
		CityOfBirth <CityOfBirth>	[1..1]	Text		131
		CountryOfBirth <CtryOfBirth>	[1..1]	CodeSet		132
		Other <Othr>	[0..*]			132
		Identification <Id>	[1..1]	Text		132
		SchemeName <SchmeNm>	[0..1]			132
	{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		132
	Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		133
		Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		133
		CountryOfResidence <CtryOfRes>	[0..1]	CodeSet		133
		ContactDetails <CtctDtls>	[0..1]	±		133

1.4.3.21.7 SettlementInformation <SttlmInf>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Specifies the details on how the settlement of the original transaction(s) between the instructing agent and the instructed agent was completed.

Impacted by: ✓C22 InstructedReimbursementAgentAccountRule ✓, ✓C24 InstructingReimbursementAgentAccountRule ✓, ✓C30 SettlementMethodAgentRule ✓, ✓C31 SettlementMethodClearingRule ✓, ✓C32 SettlementMethodCoverAgentRule ✓, ✓C33 SettlementMethodCoverRule ✓, ✓C36 ThirdReimbursementAgentAccountRule ✓, ✓C37 ThirdReimbursementAgentRule ✓

SettlementInformation <SttlmInf> contains the following **SettlementInstruction15** elements

Index	Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
		SettlementMethod <SttlmMtd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		62
		SettlementAccount <SttlmAcct>	[0..1]	±	✓C20, C19	62
		ClearingSystem <ClrSys>	[0..1]			63
	{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		63
	Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		63
		InstructingReimbursementAgent <InstgRmbrsmntAgt>	[0..1]	±		63
		InstructingReimbursementAgentAccount <InstgRmbrsmntAgtAcct>	[0..1]	±	✓C20, C19	64
		InstructedReimbursementAgent <InstdRmbrsmntAgt>	[0..1]	±		65
		InstructedReimbursementAgentAccount <InstdRmbrsmntAgtAcct>	[0..1]	±	✓C20, C19	66
		ThirdReimbursementAgent <ThrdRmbrsmntAgt>	[0..1]	±		66
		ThirdReimbursementAgentAccount <ThrdRmbrsmntAgtAcct>	[0..1]	±	✓C20, C19	67

Constraints

• InstructedReimbursementAgentAccountRule

If InstructedReimbursementAgentAccount is present, then InstructedReimbursementAgent must be present.

Error handling:

- Error severity: Fatal
- Error Code: X00037
- Error Text: Invalid message content for instructed reimbursement agent account.

• InstructingReimbursementAgentAccountRule

If InstructingReimbursementAgentAccount is present, then InstructingReimbursementAgent must be present.

Error handling:

- Error severity: Fatal
- Error Code: X00038

- *Error Text:* Invalid message content for instructing reimbursement agent account.

- **SettlementMethodAgentRule**

If SettlementMethod is equal to INDA or INGA, then ReimbursementAgent(s) and ClearingSystem are not allowed.

Error handling:

- *Error severity:* Fatal
- *Error Code:* X00018
- *Error Text:* Invalid message content for settlement method INGA or INDA.

- **SettlementMethodClearingRule**

If SettlementMethod is equal to CLRG, then SettlementAccount and ReimbursementAgent(s) are not allowed.

Error handling:

- *Error severity:* Fatal
- *Error Code:* X00019
- *Error Text:* Invalid message content for settlement method CLRG.

- **SettlementMethodCoverAgentRule**

If SettlementMethod is equal to COVE, then InstructedReimbursementAgent or InstructingReimbursementAgent must be present.

Error handling:

- *Error severity:* Fatal
- *Error Code:* X00076
- *Error Text:* Invalid message content for cover settlement method and reimbursement agents.

- **SettlementMethodCoverRule**

If SettlementMethod is equal to COVE, then SettlementAccount and ClearingSystem are not allowed.

Error handling:

- *Error severity:* Fatal
- *Error Code:* X00075
- *Error Text:* Invalid message content for cover settlement method with settlement account and clearing system.

- **ThirdReimbursementAgentAccountRule**

If ThirdReimbursementAgentAccount is present, then ThirdReimbursementAgent must be present.

Error handling:

- *Error severity:* Fatal
- *Error Code:* X00039
- *Error Text:* Invalid message content for third reimbursement agent account.

- **ThirdReimbursementAgentRule**

If ThirdReimbursementAgent is present, then InstructingReimbursementAgent and InstructedReimbursementAgent must both be present.

Error handling:

- *Error severity:* Fatal
- *Error Code:* X00040
- *Error Text:* Invalid message content for third reimbursement agent.

1.4.3.21.7.1 SettlementMethod <SttlmMtd>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Method used to settle the (batch of) payment instructions.

Datatype: [SettlementMethod1Code](#) on page 211

CodeName	Name	Definition
INDA	InstructedAgent	Settlement is done by the agent instructed to execute a payment instruction.
INGA	InstructingAgent	Settlement is done by the agent instructing and forwarding the payment to the next party in the payment chain.
COVE	CoverMethod	Settlement is done through a cover payment.
CLRG	ClearingSystem	Settlement is done through a payment clearing system.

1.4.3.21.7.2 SettlementAccount <SttlmAcct>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: A specific purpose account used to post debit and credit entries as a result of the transaction.

Impacted by: ✓ [C20 IdentificationOrProxyPresenceRule](#) ✓, [C19 IdentificationAndProxyGuideline](#)

SettlementAccount <SttlmAcct> contains the following elements (see [CashAccount40](#) on page 99 for details)

Index	Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
		Identification <Id>	[0..1]	±		99
		Type <Tp>	[0..1]	±		100
		Currency <Ccy>	[0..1]	CodeSet		100
		Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		100
		Proxy <Prxy>	[0..1]	±		100

Constraints

- **IdentificationAndProxyGuideline**

If the account identification is not defined through a conventional identification such as an email address or a mobile number, then the proxy element should be used for the identification of the account.

- **IdentificationOrProxyPresenceRule**

Identification must be present or Proxy must be present. Both may be present.

Error handling:

- *Error severity:* Fatal
- *Error Code:* X00498
- *Error Text:* Missing account identification or account proxy.

1.4.3.21.7.3 ClearingSystem <ClrSys>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Specification of a pre-agreed offering between clearing agents or the channel through which the payment instruction is processed.

ClearingSystem <ClrSys> contains one of the following **ClearingSystemIdentification3Choice** elements

Index	Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		63
	Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		63

1.4.3.21.7.3.1 Code <Cd>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Infrastructure through which the payment instruction is processed, as published in an external clearing system identification code list.

Datatype: ExternalCashClearingSystem1Code on page 192

1.4.3.21.7.3.2 Proprietary <Prtry>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Clearing system identification in a proprietary form.

Datatype: Max35Text on page 220

1.4.3.21.7.4 InstructingReimbursementAgent <InstgRmbrsmntAgt>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Agent through which the instructing agent will reimburse the instructed agent.

Usage: If InstructingAgent and InstructedAgent have the same reimbursement agent, then only InstructingReimbursementAgent must be used.

InstructingReimbursementAgent <InstgRmbrsmntAgt> contains the following elements (see [BranchAndFinancialInstitutionIdentification8](#) on page 110 for details)

Index	Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
		FinancialInstitutionIdentification <FinInstnId>	[1..1]			111
		BICFI <BICFI>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		111
		ClearingSystemMemberIdentification <ClrSysMmbld>	[0..1]	±		112
		LEI <LEI>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		112
		Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		112
		PostalAddress <PstlAdr>	[0..1]	±		112
		Other <Othr>	[0..1]	±		113
		BranchIdentification <BrnchId>	[0..1]			114
		Identification <Id>	[0..1]	Text		114
		LEI <LEI>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		114
		Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		114
		PostalAddress <PstlAdr>	[0..1]	±		114

1.4.3.21.7.5 InstructingReimbursementAgentAccount <InstgRmbrsmntAgtAcct>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Unambiguous identification of the account of the instructing reimbursement agent account at its servicing agent in the payment chain.

Impacted by: ✓ [C20 IdentificationOrProxyPresenceRule](#) ✓, [C19 IdentificationAndProxyGuideline](#)

InstructingReimbursementAgentAccount <InstgRmbrsmntAgtAcct> contains the following elements (see [CashAccount40](#) on page 99 for details)

Index	Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
		Identification <Id>	[0..1]	±		99
		Type <Tp>	[0..1]	±		100
		Currency <Ccy>	[0..1]	CodeSet		100
		Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		100
		Proxy <Prxy>	[0..1]	±		100

Constraints

- **IdentificationAndProxyGuideline**

If the account identification is not defined through a conventional identification such as an email address or a mobile number, then the proxy element should be used for the identification of the account.

- **IdentificationOrProxyPresenceRule**

Identification must be present or Proxy must be present. Both may be present.

Error handling:

- *Error severity:* Fatal
- *Error Code:* X00498
- *Error Text:* Missing account identification or account proxy.

1.4.3.21.7.6 InstructedReimbursementAgent <InstdRmbrsmntAgt>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Agent at which the instructed agent will be reimbursed.

Usage: If InstructedReimbursementAgent contains a branch of the InstructedAgent, then the party in InstructedAgent will claim reimbursement from that branch/will be paid by that branch.

Usage: If InstructingAgent and InstructedAgent have the same reimbursement agent, then only InstructingReimbursementAgent must be used.

InstructedReimbursementAgent <InstdRmbrsmntAgt> contains the following elements (see [BranchAndFinancialInstitutionIdentification8](#) on page 110 for details)

Index	Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
		FinancialInstitutionIdentification <FinInstnId>	[1..1]			111
		BICFI <BICFI>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		111
		ClearingSystemMemberIdentification <ClrSysMmbld>	[0..1]	±		112
		LEI <LEI>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		112
		Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		112
		PostalAddress <PstlAdr>	[0..1]	±		112
		Other <Othr>	[0..1]	±		113
		BranchIdentification <BrnchId>	[0..1]			114
		Identification <Id>	[0..1]	Text		114
		LEI <LEI>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		114
		Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		114
		PostalAddress <PstlAdr>	[0..1]	±		114

1.4.3.21.7.7 InstructedReimbursementAgentAccount <InstdRmbrsmntAgtAcct>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Unambiguous identification of the account of the instructed reimbursement agent account at its servicing agent in the payment chain.

Impacted by: ✓ C20 IdentificationOrProxyPresenceRule ✓, C19 IdentificationAndProxyGuideline

InstructedReimbursementAgentAccount <InstdRmbrsmntAgtAcct> contains the following elements (see CashAccount40 on page 99 for details)

Index	Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
		Identification </d>	[0..1]	±		99
		Type <Tp>	[0..1]	±		100
		Currency <Ccy>	[0..1]	CodeSet		100
		Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		100
		Proxy <Prxy>	[0..1]	±		100

Constraints

- **IdentificationAndProxyGuideline**

If the account identification is not defined through a conventional identification such as an email address or a mobile number, then the proxy element should be used for the identification of the account.

- **IdentificationOrProxyPresenceRule**

Identification must be present or Proxy must be present. Both may be present.

Error handling:

- *Error severity:* Fatal
- *Error Code:* X00498
- *Error Text:* Missing account identification or account proxy.

1.4.3.21.7.8 ThirdReimbursementAgent <ThrdRmbrsmntAgt>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Agent at which the instructed agent will be reimbursed.

Usage: If ThirdReimbursementAgent contains a branch of the InstructedAgent, then the party in InstructedAgent will claim reimbursement from that branch/will be paid by that branch.

ThirdReimbursementAgent <ThrdRmbrsmntAgt> contains the following elements (see [BranchAndFinancialInstitutionIdentification8](#) on page 110 for details)

Index	Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
		FinancialInstitutionIdentification <FinInstnId>	[1..1]			111
		BICFI <BICFI>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		111
		ClearingSystemMemberIdentification <ClrSysMmbld>	[0..1]	±		112
		LEI <LEI>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		112
		Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		112
		PostalAddress <PstlAdr>	[0..1]	±		112
		Other <Othr>	[0..1]	±		113
		BranchIdentification <BrnchId>	[0..1]			114
		Identification <Id>	[0..1]	Text		114
		LEI <LEI>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		114
		Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		114
		PostalAddress <PstlAdr>	[0..1]	±		114

1.4.3.21.7.9 ThirdReimbursementAgentAccount <ThrdRmbrsmntAgtAcct>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Unambiguous identification of the account of the third reimbursement agent account at its servicing agent in the payment chain.

Impacted by: ✓ [C20 IdentificationOrProxyPresenceRule](#) ✓, [C19 IdentificationAndProxyGuideline](#)

ThirdReimbursementAgentAccount <ThrdRmbrsmntAgtAcct> contains the following elements (see [CashAccount40](#) on page 99 for details)

Index	Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
		Identification <Id>	[0..1]	±		99
		Type <Tp>	[0..1]	±		100
		Currency <Ccy>	[0..1]	CodeSet		100
		Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		100
		Proxy <Prxy>	[0..1]	±		100

Constraints

- **IdentificationAndProxyGuideline**

If the account identification is not defined through a conventional identification such as an email address or a mobile number, then the proxy element should be used for the identification of the account.

- **IdentificationOrProxyPresenceRule**

Identification must be present or Proxy must be present. Both may be present.

Error handling:

- *Error severity:* Fatal
- *Error Code:* X00498
- *Error Text:* Missing account identification or account proxy.

1.4.3.21.8 PaymentTypeInformation <PmtTpInf>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Set of elements used to further specify the type of transaction.

PaymentTypeInformation <PmtTpInf> contains the following elements (see [PaymentTypeInformation27 on page 134](#) for details)

Index	Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
		InstructionPriority <InstrPrty>	[0..1]	CodeSet		134
		ClearingChannel <ClrChanl>	[0..1]	CodeSet		134
		ServiceLevel <SvcLvl>	[0..*]			135
	{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		135
	Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		135
		LocalInstrument <LclInstrm>	[0..1]			135
	{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		135
	Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		136
		SequenceType <SeqTp>	[0..1]	CodeSet		136
		CategoryPurpose <CtgyPurp>	[0..1]			136
	{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		136
	Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		136

1.4.3.21.9 PaymentMethod <PmtMtd>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Specifies the means of payment that will be used to move the amount of money.

Datatype: [PaymentMethod4Code on page 207](#)

CodeName	Name	Definition
CHK	Cheque	Written order to a bank to pay a certain amount of money from one person to another person.
TRF	CreditTransfer	Transfer of an amount of money in the books of the account servicer.
DD	DirectDebit	Collection of an amount of money from the debtor's bank account by the creditor. The amount of money and dates of collections may vary.
TRA	TransferAdvice	Transfer of an amount of money in the books of the account servicer. An advice should be sent back to the account owner.

1.4.3.21.10 MandateRelatedInformation <MndtRltdInf>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Provides further details of the mandate signed between the creditor and the debtor.

MandateRelatedInformation <MndtRltdInf> contains one of the following **MandateRelatedData3Choice** elements

Index	Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	{Or	DirectDebitMandate <DrctDbtMndt>	[0..1]		✓C3, ✓C4	71
		MandateIdentification <MndtId>	[0..1]	Text		73
		DateOfSignature <DtOfSgntr>	[0..1]	Date		73
		AmendmentIndicator <AmdmntInd>	[0..1]	Indicator		73
		AmendmentInformationDetails <AmdmntInfDtls>	[0..1]			73
		OriginalMandateIdentification <OrgnlMndtId>	[0..1]	Text		74
		OriginalCreditorSchemeIdentification <OrgnlCdtrSchmId>	[0..1]	±		74
		OriginalCreditorAgent <OrgnlCdtrAgt>	[0..1]	±		75
		OriginalCreditorAgentAccount <OrgnlCdtrAgtAcct>	[0..1]	±	✓C20, C19	76
		OriginalDebtor <OrgnlDbtr>	[0..1]	±		77
		OriginalDebtorAccount <OrgnlDbtrAcct>	[0..1]	±	✓C20, C19	78
		OriginalDebtorAgent <OrgnlDbtrAgt>	[0..1]	±		79
		OriginalDebtorAgentAccount <OrgnlDbtrAgtAcct>	[0..1]	±	✓C20, C19	80
		OriginalFinalCollectionDate <OrgnlFnlColltnDt>	[0..1]	Date		81
		OriginalFrequency <OrgnlFrqcy>	[0..1]	±		81
		OriginalReason <OrgnlRsn>	[0..1]			81
	{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		82
	Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		82
		OriginalTrackingDays <OrgnlTrckgDays>	[0..1]	Text		82
		ElectronicSignature <ElctrncSgntr>	[0..1]	Text		82
		FirstCollectionDate <FrstColltnDt>	[0..1]	Date		82
		FinalCollectionDate <FnlColltnDt>	[0..1]	Date		82
		Frequency <Frqcy>	[0..1]	±		82
		Reason <Rsn>	[0..1]			83
	{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		83
	Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		83
		TrackingDays <TrckgDays>	[0..1]	Text		83
	Or}	CreditTransferMandate <CdtTrfMndt>	[0..1]	±		83

1.4.3.21.10.1 DirectDebitMandate <DrctDbtMndt>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Specific direct debit mandate data.

Impacted by: ✓ C3 AmendmentIndicatorFalseRule ✓, ✓ C4 AmendmentIndicatorTrueRule ✓

DirectDebitMandate <DrctDbtMndt> contains the following **MandateRelatedInformation16** elements

Index	Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
		MandateIdentification <MndtId>	[0..1]	Text		73
		DateOfSignature <DtOfSgntr>	[0..1]	Date		73
		AmendmentIndicator <AmdmntInd>	[0..1]	Indicator		73
		AmendmentInformationDetails <AmdmntInfDtls>	[0..1]			73
		OriginalMandateIdentification <OrgnlMndtId>	[0..1]	Text		74
		OriginalCreditorSchemeIdentification <OrgnlCdtrSchmId>	[0..1]	±		74
		OriginalCreditorAgent <OrgnlCdtrAgt>	[0..1]	±		75
		OriginalCreditorAgentAccount <OrgnlCdtrAgtAcct>	[0..1]	±	✓C20, C19	76
		OriginalDebtor <OrgnlDbtr>	[0..1]	±		77
		OriginalDebtorAccount <OrgnlDbtrAcct>	[0..1]	±	✓C20, C19	78
		OriginalDebtorAgent <OrgnlDbtrAgt>	[0..1]	±		79
		OriginalDebtorAgentAccount <OrgnlDbtrAgtAcct>	[0..1]	±	✓C20, C19	80
		OriginalFinalCollectionDate <OrgnlFnlColltnDt>	[0..1]	Date		81
		OriginalFrequency <OrgnlFrqcy>	[0..1]	±		81
		OriginalReason <OrgnlRsn>	[0..1]			81
	{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		82
	Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		82
		OriginalTrackingDays <OrgnlTrckgDays>	[0..1]	Text		82
		ElectronicSignature <ElctrncSgntr>	[0..1]	Text		82
		FirstCollectionDate <FrstColltnDt>	[0..1]	Date		82
		FinalCollectionDate <FnlColltnDt>	[0..1]	Date		82
		Frequency <Frqcy>	[0..1]	±		82
		Reason <Rsn>	[0..1]			83
	{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		83
	Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		83
		TrackingDays <TrckgDays>	[0..1]	Text		83

Constraints

- **AmendmentIndicatorFalseRule**

If AmendmentIndicator is false, then AmendmentInformationDetails is not allowed.

Error handling:

- *Error severity:* Fatal
- *Error Code:* X00013
- *Error Text:* Invalid message content for false amendment indicator and details.

- **AmendmentIndicatorTrueRule**

If AmendmentIndicator is true, then AmendmentInformationDetails must be present.

Error handling:

- *Error severity:* Fatal
- *Error Code:* X00012
- *Error Text:* Invalid message content for true amendment indicator and details.

1.4.3.21.10.1.1 MandateIdentification <MndtId>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Unique identification, as assigned by the creditor, to unambiguously identify the mandate.

Datatype: Max35Text on page 220

1.4.3.21.10.1.2 DateOfSignature <DtOfSgntr>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Date on which the direct debit mandate has been signed by the debtor.

Datatype: ISODate on page 214

1.4.3.21.10.1.3 AmendmentIndicator <AmdmntInd>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Indicator notifying whether the underlying mandate is amended or not.

Datatype: One of the following values must be used (see TrueFalseIndicator on page 216):

- *Meaning When True:* True
- *Meaning When False:* False

1.4.3.21.10.1.4 AmendmentInformationDetails <AmdmntInfDtls>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: List of mandate elements that have been modified.

AmendmentInformationDetails <AmdmntInfDtls> contains the following
AmendmentInformationDetails15 elements

Index	Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
		OriginalMandateIdentification <OrgnlMndtld>	[0..1]	Text		74
		OriginalCreditorSchemeIdentification <OrgnlCdtrSchmeld>	[0..1]	±		74
		OriginalCreditorAgent <OrgnlCdtrAgt>	[0..1]	±		75
		OriginalCreditorAgentAccount <OrgnlCdtrAgtAcct>	[0..1]	±	✓C20, C19	76
		OriginalDebtor <OrgnlDbtr>	[0..1]	±		77
		OriginalDebtorAccount <OrgnlDbtrAcct>	[0..1]	±	✓C20, C19	78
		OriginalDebtorAgent <OrgnlDbtrAgt>	[0..1]	±		79
		OriginalDebtorAgentAccount <OrgnlDbtrAgtAcct>	[0..1]	±	✓C20, C19	80
		OriginalFinalCollectionDate <OrgnlFnlColltnDt>	[0..1]	Date		81
		OriginalFrequency <OrgnlFrqcy>	[0..1]	±		81
		OriginalReason <OrgnlRsn>	[0..1]			81
	{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		82
	Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		82
		OriginalTrackingDays <OrgnlTrckgDays>	[0..1]	Text		82

1.4.3.21.10.1.4.1 OriginalMandateIdentification <OrgnlMndtld>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Unique identification, as assigned by the creditor, to unambiguously identify the original mandate.

Datatype: Max35Text on page 220

1.4.3.21.10.1.4.2 OriginalCreditorSchemeIdentification <OrgnlCdtrSchmeld>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Original creditor scheme identification that has been modified.

OriginalCreditorSchemeIdentification <OrgnlCdtrSchmId> contains the following elements (see [PartyIdentification272](#) on page 125 for details)

Index	Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
		Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		126
		PostalAddress <PstlAdr>	[0..1]	±		127
		Identification <Id>	[0..1]			127
	{Or	OrganisationIdentification <OrgId>	[1..1]			128
		AnyBIC <AnyBIC>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		129
		LEI <LEI>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		129
		Other <Othr>	[0..*]			129
		Identification <Id>	[1..1]	Text		129
		SchemeName <SchmeNm>	[0..1]			130
	{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		130
	Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		130
		Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		130
	Or}	PrivateIdentification <PrvtId>	[1..1]			130
		DateAndPlaceOfBirth <DtAndPlcOfBirth>	[0..1]			131
		BirthDate <BirthDt>	[1..1]	Date		131
		ProvinceOfBirth <PrvcOfBirth>	[0..1]	Text		131
		CityOfBirth <CityOfBirth>	[1..1]	Text		131
		CountryOfBirth <CtryOfBirth>	[1..1]	CodeSet		132
		Other <Othr>	[0..*]			132
		Identification <Id>	[1..1]	Text		132
		SchemeName <SchmeNm>	[0..1]			132
	{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		132
	Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		133
		Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		133
		CountryOfResidence <CtryOfRes>	[0..1]	CodeSet		133
		ContactDetails <CtctDtls>	[0..1]	±		133

1.4.3.21.10.1.4.3 OriginalCreditorAgent <OrgnlCdtrAgt>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Original creditor agent that has been modified.

OriginalCreditorAgent <OrgnlCdtrAgt> contains the following elements (see [BranchAndFinancialInstitutionIdentification8](#) on page 110 for details)

Index	Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
		FinancialInstitutionIdentification <FinInstnId>	[1..1]			111
		BICFI <BICFI>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		111
		ClearingSystemMemberIdentification <ClrSysMmbld>	[0..1]	±		112
		LEI <LEI>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		112
		Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		112
		PostalAddress <PstlAdr>	[0..1]	±		112
		Other <Othr>	[0..1]	±		113
		BranchIdentification <BrnchId>	[0..1]			114
		Identification <Id>	[0..1]	Text		114
		LEI <LEI>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		114
		Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		114
		PostalAddress <PstlAdr>	[0..1]	±		114

1.4.3.21.10.1.4.4 OriginalCreditorAgentAccount <OrgnlCdtrAgtAcct>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Original creditor agent account that has been modified.

Impacted by: ✓ [C20 IdentificationOrProxyPresenceRule](#) ✓, [C19 IdentificationAndProxyGuideline](#)

OriginalCreditorAgentAccount <OrgnlCdtrAgtAcct> contains the following elements (see [CashAccount40](#) on page 99 for details)

Index	Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
		Identification <Id>	[0..1]	±		99
		Type <Tp>	[0..1]	±		100
		Currency <Ccy>	[0..1]	CodeSet		100
		Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		100
		Proxy <Prxy>	[0..1]	±		100

Constraints

- **IdentificationAndProxyGuideline**

If the account identification is not defined through a conventional identification such as an email address or a mobile number, then the proxy element should be used for the identification of the account.

- **IdentificationOrProxyPresenceRule**

Identification must be present or Proxy must be present. Both may be present.

Error handling:

- *Error severity:* Fatal
- *Error Code:* X00498
- *Error Text:* Missing account identification or account proxy.

1.4.3.21.10.1.4.5 OriginalDebtor <OrgnIDbtr>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Original debtor that has been modified.

OriginalDebtor <OrgnIDbtr> contains the following elements (see [PartyIdentification272](#) on page 125 for details)

Index	Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
		Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		126
		PostalAddress <PstlAdr>	[0..1]	±		127
		Identification <Id>	[0..1]			127
	{Or	OrganisationIdentification <OrgId>	[1..1]			128
		AnyBIC <AnyBIC>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		129
		LEI <LEI>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		129
		Other <Othr>	[0..*]			129
		Identification <Id>	[1..1]	Text		129
		SchemeName <SchmeNm>	[0..1]			130
	{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		130
	Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		130
		Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		130
	Or}	PrivateIdentification <PrvtId>	[1..1]			130
		DateAndPlaceOfBirth <DtAndPlcOfBirth>	[0..1]			131
		BirthDate <BirthDt>	[1..1]	Date		131
		ProvinceOfBirth <PrvcOfBirth>	[0..1]	Text		131
		CityOfBirth <CityOfBirth>	[1..1]	Text		131
		CountryOfBirth <CtryOfBirth>	[1..1]	CodeSet		132
		Other <Othr>	[0..*]			132
		Identification <Id>	[1..1]	Text		132
		SchemeName <SchmeNm>	[0..1]			132
	{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		132
	Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		133
		Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		133
		CountryOfResidence <CtryOfRes>	[0..1]	CodeSet		133
		ContactDetails <CtctDtls>	[0..1]	±		133

1.4.3.21.10.1.4.6 OriginalDebtorAccount <OrgnIDbtrAcct>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Original debtor account that has been modified.

Impacted by: ✓ [C20 IdentificationOrProxyPresenceRule](#) ✓, [C19 IdentificationAndProxyGuideline](#)

OriginalDebtorAccount <OrgnIDbtrAcct> contains the following elements (see [CashAccount40](#) on page 99 for details)

Index	Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
		Identification <Id>	[0..1]	±		99
		Type <Tp>	[0..1]	±		100
		Currency <Ccy>	[0..1]	CodeSet		100
		Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		100
		Proxy <Prxy>	[0..1]	±		100

Constraints

- **IdentificationAndProxyGuideline**

If the account identification is not defined through a conventional identification such as an email address or a mobile number, then the proxy element should be used for the identification of the account.

- **IdentificationOrProxyPresenceRule**

Identification must be present or Proxy must be present. Both may be present.

Error handling:

- *Error severity:* Fatal
- *Error Code:* X00498
- *Error Text:* Missing account identification or account proxy.

1.4.3.21.10.1.4.7 OriginalDebtorAgent <OrgnIDbtrAgt>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Original debtor agent that has been modified.

OriginalDebtorAgent <OrgnIDbtrAgt> contains the following elements (see [BranchAndFinancialInstitutionIdentification8](#) on page 110 for details)

Index	Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
		FinancialInstitutionIdentification <FinInstnId>	[1..1]			111
		BICFI <BICFI>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		111
		ClearingSystemMemberIdentification <ClrSysMmbld>	[0..1]	±		112
		LEI <LEI>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		112
		Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		112
		PostalAddress <PstlAdr>	[0..1]	±		112
		Other <Othr>	[0..1]	±		113
		BranchIdentification <BrnchId>	[0..1]			114
		Identification <Id>	[0..1]	Text		114
		LEI <LEI>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		114
		Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		114
		PostalAddress <PstlAdr>	[0..1]	±		114

1.4.3.21.10.1.4.8 OriginalDebtorAgentAccount <OrgnIDbtrAgtAcct>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Original debtor agent account that has been modified.

Impacted by: ✓ [C20 IdentificationOrProxyPresenceRule](#) ✓, [C19 IdentificationAndProxyGuideline](#)

OriginalDebtorAgentAccount <OrgnIDbtrAgtAcct> contains the following elements (see [CashAccount40](#) on page 99 for details)

Index	Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
		Identification <Id>	[0..1]	±		99
		Type <Tp>	[0..1]	±		100
		Currency <Ccy>	[0..1]	CodeSet		100
		Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		100
		Proxy <Prxy>	[0..1]	±		100

Constraints

- **IdentificationAndProxyGuideline**

If the account identification is not defined through a conventional identification such as an email address or a mobile number, then the proxy element should be used for the identification of the account.

- **IdentificationOrProxyPresenceRule**

Identification must be present or Proxy must be present. Both may be present.

Error handling:

- *Error severity:* Fatal
- *Error Code:* X00498
- *Error Text:* Missing account identification or account proxy.

1.4.3.21.10.1.4.9 OriginalFinalCollectionDate <OrgnlFnlColltnDt>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Original final collection date that has been modified.

Datatype: ISODate on page 214

1.4.3.21.10.1.4.10 OriginalFrequency <OrgnlFrqcy>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Original frequency that has been modified.

OriginalFrequency <OrgnlFrqcy> contains one of the following elements (see Frequency36Choice on page 115 for details)

Index	Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	{Or	Type <Tp>	[1..1]	CodeSet		116
	Or	Period <Prd>	[1..1]			116
		Type <Tp>	[1..1]	CodeSet		117
		CountPerPeriod <CntPerPrd>	[1..1]	Quantity		117
	Or}	PointInTime <PtInTm>	[1..1]			117
		Type <Tp>	[1..1]	CodeSet		117
		PointInTime <PtInTm>	[1..1]	Text		118

1.4.3.21.10.1.4.11 OriginalReason <OrgnlRsn>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Original reason for the mandate to allow the user to distinguish between different mandates for the same creditor.

OriginalReason <OrgnlRsn> contains one of the following **MandateSetupReason1Choice** elements

Index	Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		82
	Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		82

1.4.3.21.10.1.4.11.1 Code <Cd>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Reason for the mandate setup, as published in an external reason code list.

Datatype: [ExternalMandateSetupReason1Code on page 199](#)

1.4.3.21.10.1.4.11.2 Proprietary <Prtry>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Reason for the mandate setup, in a proprietary form.

Datatype: [Max70Text on page 220](#)

1.4.3.21.10.1.4.12 OriginalTrackingDays <OrgnlTrckgDays>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Original number of tracking days that has been modified.

Datatype: [Exact2NumericText on page 218](#)

1.4.3.21.10.1.5 ElectronicSignature <ElctrncSgntr>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Additional security provisions, such as a digital signature, as provided by the debtor.

Datatype: [Max1025Text on page 218](#)

1.4.3.21.10.1.6 FirstCollectionDate <FrstColltnDt>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Date of the first collection of a direct debit as per the mandate.

Datatype: [ISODate on page 214](#)

1.4.3.21.10.1.7 FinalCollectionDate <FnlColltnDt>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Date of the final collection of a direct debit as per the mandate.

Datatype: [ISODate on page 214](#)

1.4.3.21.10.1.8 Frequency <Frqcy>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Regularity with which direct debit instructions are to be created and processed.

Frequency <Frqcy> contains one of the following elements (see [Frequency36Choice](#) on page 115 for details)

Index	Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	{Or	Type <Tp>	[1..1]	CodeSet		116
	Or	Period <Prd>	[1..1]			116
		Type <Tp>	[1..1]	CodeSet		117
		CountPerPeriod <CntPerPrd>	[1..1]	Quantity		117
	Or}	PointInTime <PtInTm>	[1..1]			117
		Type <Tp>	[1..1]	CodeSet		117
		PointInTime <PtInTm>	[1..1]	Text		118

1.4.3.21.10.1.9 Reason <Rsn>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Reason for the direct debit mandate to allow the user to distinguish between different mandates for the same creditor.

Reason <Rsn> contains one of the following **MandateSetupReason1Choice** elements

Index	Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		83
	Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		83

1.4.3.21.10.1.9.1 Code <Cd>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Reason for the mandate setup, as published in an external reason code list.

Datatype: [ExternalMandateSetupReason1Code](#) on page 199

1.4.3.21.10.1.9.2 Proprietary <Prtry>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Reason for the mandate setup, in a proprietary form.

Datatype: [Max70Text](#) on page 220

1.4.3.21.10.1.10 TrackingDays <TrckgDays>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Specifies the number of days the direct debit instruction must be tracked.

Datatype: [Exact2NumericText](#) on page 218

1.4.3.21.10.2 CreditTransferMandate <CdtTrfMndt>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Specific credit transfer mandate data.

CreditTransferMandate <CdtTrfMndt> contains the following elements (see [CreditTransferMandateData1](#) on page 106 for details)

Index	Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
		MandateIdentification <MndtId>	[0..1]	Text		106
		Type <Tp>	[0..1]	±		106
		DateOfSignature <DtOfSgntr>	[0..1]	Date		107
		DateOfVerification <DtOfVrfctn>	[0..1]	DateTime		107
		ElectronicSignature <ElctrncSgntr>	[0..1]	Binary		107
		FirstPaymentDate <FrstPmtDt>	[0..1]	Date		107
		FinalPaymentDate <FnlPmtDt>	[0..1]	Date		107
		Frequency <Frqcy>	[0..1]	±		108
		Reason <Rsn>	[0..1]			108
	{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		108
	Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		108

1.4.3.21.11 RemittanceInformation <RmtInf>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Information supplied to enable the matching of an entry with the items that the transfer is intended to settle, such as commercial invoices in an accounts' receivable system.

RemittanceInformation <RmtInf> contains the following elements (see [RemittanceInformation22](#) on page 144 for details)

Index	Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
		Unstructured <Ustrd>	[0..*]	Text		144
		Structured <Strd>	[0..*]	±		144

1.4.3.21.12 UltimateDebtor <UltmtDbtr>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Ultimate party that owes an amount of money to the (ultimate) creditor.

UltimateDebtor <UltmtDbtr> contains one of the following **Party50Choice** elements

Index	Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	{Or	Party <Pty>	[1..1]	±		84
	Or}	Agent <Agt>	[1..1]	±		85

1.4.3.21.12.1 Party <Pty>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Identification of a person or an organisation.

Party <Pty> contains the following elements (see [PartyIdentification272](#) on page 125 for details)

Index	Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
		Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		126
		PostalAddress <PstlAdr>	[0..1]	±		127
		Identification <Id>	[0..1]			127
	{Or	OrganisationIdentification <OrgId>	[1..1]			128
		AnyBIC <AnyBIC>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		129
		LEI <LEI>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		129
		Other <Othr>	[0..*]			129
		Identification <Id>	[1..1]	Text		129
		SchemeName <SchmeNm>	[0..1]			130
	{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		130
	Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		130
		Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		130
	Or}	PrivateIdentification <PrvtId>	[1..1]			130
		DateAndPlaceOfBirth <DtAndPlcOfBirth>	[0..1]			131
		BirthDate <BirthDt>	[1..1]	Date		131
		ProvinceOfBirth <PrvcOfBirth>	[0..1]	Text		131
		CityOfBirth <CityOfBirth>	[1..1]	Text		131
		CountryOfBirth <CtryOfBirth>	[1..1]	CodeSet		132
		Other <Othr>	[0..*]			132
		Identification <Id>	[1..1]	Text		132
		SchemeName <SchmeNm>	[0..1]			132
	{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		132
	Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		133
		Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		133
		CountryOfResidence <CtryOfRes>	[0..1]	CodeSet		133
		ContactDetails <CtctDtls>	[0..1]	±		133

1.4.3.21.12.2 Agent <Agt>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Identification of a financial institution.

Agent <Agt> contains the following elements (see [BranchAndFinancialInstitutionIdentification8](#) on page 110 for details)

Index	Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
		FinancialInstitutionIdentification <FinInstnId>	[1..1]			111
		BICFI <BICFI>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		111
		ClearingSystemMemberIdentification <ClrSysMmbld>	[0..1]	±		112
		LEI <LEI>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		112
		Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		112
		PostalAddress <PstlAdr>	[0..1]	±		112
		Other <Othr>	[0..1]	±		113
		BranchIdentification <BrnchId>	[0..1]			114
		Identification <Id>	[0..1]	Text		114
		LEI <LEI>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		114
		Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		114
		PostalAddress <PstlAdr>	[0..1]	±		114

1.4.3.21.13 Debtor <Dbtr>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Party that owes an amount of money to the (ultimate) creditor.

Debtor <Dbtr> contains one of the following **Party50Choice** elements

Index	Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	{Or	Party <Pty>	[1..1]	±		86
	Or}	Agent <Agt>	[1..1]	±		87

1.4.3.21.13.1 Party <Pty>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Identification of a person or an organisation.

Party <Pty> contains the following elements (see [PartyIdentification272](#) on page 125 for details)

Index	Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
		Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		126
		PostalAddress <PstlAdr>	[0..1]	±		127
		Identification <Id>	[0..1]			127
	{Or	OrganisationIdentification <OrgId>	[1..1]			128
		AnyBIC <AnyBIC>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		129
		LEI <LEI>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		129
		Other <Othr>	[0..*]			129
		Identification <Id>	[1..1]	Text		129
		SchemeName <SchmeNm>	[0..1]			130
	{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		130
	Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		130
		Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		130
	Or}	PrivateIdentification <PrvtId>	[1..1]			130
		DateAndPlaceOfBirth <DtAndPlcOfBirth>	[0..1]			131
		BirthDate <BirthDt>	[1..1]	Date		131
		ProvinceOfBirth <PrvcOfBirth>	[0..1]	Text		131
		CityOfBirth <CityOfBirth>	[1..1]	Text		131
		CountryOfBirth <CtryOfBirth>	[1..1]	CodeSet		132
		Other <Othr>	[0..*]			132
		Identification <Id>	[1..1]	Text		132
		SchemeName <SchmeNm>	[0..1]			132
	{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		132
	Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		133
		Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		133
		CountryOfResidence <CtryOfRes>	[0..1]	CodeSet		133
		ContactDetails <CtctDtls>	[0..1]	±		133

1.4.3.21.13.2 Agent <Agt>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Identification of a financial institution.

Agent <Agt> contains the following elements (see [BranchAndFinancialInstitutionIdentification8](#) on page 110 for details)

Index	Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
		FinancialInstitutionIdentification <FinInstnId>	[1..1]			111
		BICFI <BICFI>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		111
		ClearingSystemMemberIdentification <ClrSysMmbld>	[0..1]	±		112
		LEI <LEI>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		112
		Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		112
		PostalAddress <PstlAdr>	[0..1]	±		112
		Other <Othr>	[0..1]	±		113
		BranchIdentification <BrnchId>	[0..1]			114
		Identification <Id>	[0..1]	Text		114
		LEI <LEI>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		114
		Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		114
		PostalAddress <PstlAdr>	[0..1]	±		114

1.4.3.21.14 DebtorAccount <DbtrAcct>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Unambiguous identification of the account of the debtor to which a debit entry will be made as a result of the transaction.

Impacted by: ✓C20 IdentificationOrProxyPresenceRule ✓, C19 IdentificationAndProxyGuideline

DebtorAccount <DbtrAcct> contains the following elements (see [CashAccount40](#) on page 99 for details)

Index	Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
		Identification <Id>	[0..1]	±		99
		Type <Tp>	[0..1]	±		100
		Currency <Ccy>	[0..1]	CodeSet		100
		Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		100
		Proxy <Prxy>	[0..1]	±		100

Constraints

- **IdentificationAndProxyGuideline**

If the account identification is not defined through a conventional identification such as an email address or a mobile number, then the proxy element should be used for the identification of the account.

- **IdentificationOrProxyPresenceRule**

Identification must be present or Proxy must be present. Both may be present.

Error handling:

- *Error severity:* Fatal
- *Error Code:* X00498
- *Error Text:* Missing account identification or account proxy.

1.4.3.21.15 DebtorAgent <DbtrAgt>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Financial institution servicing an account for the debtor.

DebtorAgent <DbtrAgt> contains the following elements (see [BranchAndFinancialInstitutionIdentification8](#) on page 110 for details)

Index	Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
		FinancialInstitutionIdentification <FinInstnId>	[1..1]			111
		BICFI <BICFI>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		111
		ClearingSystemMemberIdentification <ClrSysMmbld>	[0..1]	±		112
		LEI <LEI>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		112
		Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		112
		PostalAddress <PstlAdr>	[0..1]	±		112
		Other <Othr>	[0..1]	±		113
		BranchIdentification <BrnchId>	[0..1]			114
		Identification <Id>	[0..1]	Text		114
		LEI <LEI>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		114
		Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		114
		PostalAddress <PstlAdr>	[0..1]	±		114

1.4.3.21.16 DebtorAgentAccount <DbtrAgtAcct>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Unambiguous identification of the account of the debtor agent at its servicing agent in the payment chain.

Impacted by: ✓ [C20 IdentificationOrProxyPresenceRule](#) ✓, [C19 IdentificationAndProxyGuideline](#)

DebtorAgentAccount <DbtrAgtAcct> contains the following elements (see [CashAccount40](#) on page 99 for details)

Index	Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
		Identification <Id>	[0..1]	±		99
		Type <Tp>	[0..1]	±		100
		Currency <Ccy>	[0..1]	CodeSet		100
		Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		100
		Proxy <Prxy>	[0..1]	±		100

Constraints

- **IdentificationAndProxyGuideline**

If the account identification is not defined through a conventional identification such as an email address or a mobile number, then the proxy element should be used for the identification of the account.

- **IdentificationOrProxyPresenceRule**

Identification must be present or Proxy must be present. Both may be present.

Error handling:

- *Error severity:* Fatal
- *Error Code:* X00498
- *Error Text:* Missing account identification or account proxy.

1.4.3.21.17 CreditorAgent <CdtrAgt>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Financial institution servicing an account for the creditor.

CreditorAgent <CdtrAgt> contains the following elements (see [BranchAndFinancialInstitutionIdentification8](#) on page 110 for details)

Index	Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
		FinancialInstitutionIdentification <FinInstnId>	[1..1]			111
		BICFI <BICFI>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		111
		ClearingSystemMemberIdentification <ClrSysMmbld>	[0..1]	±		112
		LEI <LEI>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		112
		Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		112
		PostalAddress <PstlAdr>	[0..1]	±		112
		Other <Othr>	[0..1]	±		113
		BranchIdentification <BrnchId>	[0..1]			114
		Identification <Id>	[0..1]	Text		114
		LEI <LEI>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		114
		Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		114
		PostalAddress <PstlAdr>	[0..1]	±		114

1.4.3.21.18 CreditorAgentAccount <CdtrAgtAcct>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Unambiguous identification of the account of the creditor agent at its servicing agent to which a credit entry will be made as a result of the payment transaction.

Impacted by: ✓C20 IdentificationOrProxyPresenceRule ✓, C19 IdentificationAndProxyGuideline

CreditorAgentAccount <CdtrAgtAcct> contains the following elements (see [CashAccount40](#) on page 99 for details)

Index	Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
		Identification <Id>	[0..1]	±		99
		Type <Tp>	[0..1]	±		100
		Currency <Ccy>	[0..1]	CodeSet		100
		Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		100
		Proxy <Prxy>	[0..1]	±		100

Constraints

- **IdentificationAndProxyGuideline**

If the account identification is not defined through a conventional identification such as an email address or a mobile number, then the proxy element should be used for the identification of the account.

- **IdentificationOrProxyPresenceRule**

Identification must be present or Proxy must be present. Both may be present.

Error handling:

- *Error severity:* Fatal
- *Error Code:* X00498
- *Error Text:* Missing account identification or account proxy.

1.4.3.21.19 Creditor <Cdtr>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Party to which an amount of money is due.

Creditor <Cdtr> contains one of the following **Party50Choice** elements

Index	Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	{Or	Party <Pty>	[1..1]	±		92
	Or}	Agent <Agt>	[1..1]	±		93

1.4.3.21.19.1 Party <Pty>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Identification of a person or an organisation.

Party <Pty> contains the following elements (see [PartyIdentification272](#) on page 125 for details)

Index	Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
		Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		126
		PostalAddress <PstlAdr>	[0..1]	±		127
		Identification <Id>	[0..1]			127
	{Or	OrganisationIdentification <OrgId>	[1..1]			128
		AnyBIC <AnyBIC>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		129
		LEI <LEI>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		129
		Other <Othr>	[0..*]			129
		Identification <Id>	[1..1]	Text		129
		SchemeName <SchmeNm>	[0..1]			130
	{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		130
	Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		130
		Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		130
	Or}	PrivateIdentification <PrvtId>	[1..1]			130
		DateAndPlaceOfBirth <DtAndPlcOfBirth>	[0..1]			131
		BirthDate <BirthDt>	[1..1]	Date		131
		ProvinceOfBirth <PrvcOfBirth>	[0..1]	Text		131
		CityOfBirth <CityOfBirth>	[1..1]	Text		131
		CountryOfBirth <CtryOfBirth>	[1..1]	CodeSet		132
		Other <Othr>	[0..*]			132
		Identification <Id>	[1..1]	Text		132
		SchemeName <SchmeNm>	[0..1]			132
	{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		132
	Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		133
		Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		133
		CountryOfResidence <CtryOfRes>	[0..1]	CodeSet		133
		ContactDetails <CtctDtls>	[0..1]	±		133

1.4.3.21.19.2 Agent <Agt>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Identification of a financial institution.

Agent <Agt> contains the following elements (see [BranchAndFinancialInstitutionIdentification8](#) on page 110 for details)

Index	Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
		FinancialInstitutionIdentification <FinInstnId>	[1..1]			111
		BICFI <BICFI>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		111
		ClearingSystemMemberIdentification <ClrSysMmbld>	[0..1]	±		112
		LEI <LEI>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		112
		Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		112
		PostalAddress <PstlAdr>	[0..1]	±		112
		Other <Othr>	[0..1]	±		113
		BranchIdentification <BrnchId>	[0..1]			114
		Identification <Id>	[0..1]	Text		114
		LEI <LEI>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		114
		Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		114
		PostalAddress <PstlAdr>	[0..1]	±		114

1.4.3.21.20 CreditorAccount <CdtrAcct>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Unambiguous identification of the account of the creditor to which a credit entry will be posted as a result of the payment transaction.

Impacted by: ✓C20 IdentificationOrProxyPresenceRule ✓, C19 IdentificationAndProxyGuideline

CreditorAccount <CdtrAcct> contains the following elements (see [CashAccount40](#) on page 99 for details)

Index	Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
		Identification <Id>	[0..1]	±		99
		Type <Tp>	[0..1]	±		100
		Currency <Ccy>	[0..1]	CodeSet		100
		Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		100
		Proxy <Prxy>	[0..1]	±		100

Constraints

- **IdentificationAndProxyGuideline**

If the account identification is not defined through a conventional identification such as an email address or a mobile number, then the proxy element should be used for the identification of the account.

- **IdentificationOrProxyPresenceRule**

Identification must be present or Proxy must be present. Both may be present.

Error handling:

- *Error severity:* Fatal
- *Error Code:* X00498
- *Error Text:* Missing account identification or account proxy.

1.4.3.21.21 UltimateCreditor <UltmtCdtr>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Ultimate party to which an amount of money is due.

UltimateCreditor <UltmtCdtr> contains one of the following **Party50Choice** elements

Index	Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	{Or	Party <Pty>	[1..1]	±		95
	Or}	Agent <Agt>	[1..1]	±		96

1.4.3.21.21.1 Party <Pty>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Identification of a person or an organisation.

Party <Pty> contains the following elements (see [PartyIdentification272](#) on page 125 for details)

Index	Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
		Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		126
		PostalAddress <PstlAdr>	[0..1]	±		127
		Identification <Id>	[0..1]			127
	{Or	OrganisationIdentification <OrgId>	[1..1]			128
		AnyBIC <AnyBIC>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		129
		LEI <LEI>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		129
		Other <Othr>	[0..*]			129
		Identification <Id>	[1..1]	Text		129
		SchemeName <SchmeNm>	[0..1]			130
	{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		130
	Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		130
		Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		130
	Or}	PrivateIdentification <PrvtId>	[1..1]			130
		DateAndPlaceOfBirth <DtAndPlcOfBirth>	[0..1]			131
		BirthDate <BirthDt>	[1..1]	Date		131
		ProvinceOfBirth <PrvcOfBirth>	[0..1]	Text		131
		CityOfBirth <CityOfBirth>	[1..1]	Text		131
		CountryOfBirth <CtryOfBirth>	[1..1]	CodeSet		132
		Other <Othr>	[0..*]			132
		Identification <Id>	[1..1]	Text		132
		SchemeName <SchmeNm>	[0..1]			132
	{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		132
	Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		133
		Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		133
		CountryOfResidence <CtryOfRes>	[0..1]	CodeSet		133
		ContactDetails <CtctDtls>	[0..1]	±		133

1.4.3.21.21.2 Agent <Agt>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Identification of a financial institution.

Agent <Agt> contains the following elements (see [BranchAndFinancialInstitutionIdentification8](#) on page 110 for details)

Index	Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
		FinancialInstitutionIdentification <FinInstnId>	[1..1]			111
		BICFI <BICFI>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		111
		ClearingSystemMemberIdentification <ClrSysMmbld>	[0..1]	±		112
		LEI <LEI>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		112
		Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		112
		PostalAddress <PstlAdr>	[0..1]	±		112
		Other <Othr>	[0..1]	±		113
		BranchIdentification <BrnchId>	[0..1]			114
		Identification <Id>	[0..1]	Text		114
		LEI <LEI>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		114
		Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		114
		PostalAddress <PstlAdr>	[0..1]	±		114

1.4.3.21.22 Purpose <Purp>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Underlying reason for the payment transaction.

Usage:

Purpose is used by the end customers, that is initiating party, (ultimate) debtor, (ultimate) creditor to provide information concerning the nature of the payment. Purpose is a content element, which is not used for processing by any of the agents involved in the payment chain.

Purpose <Purp> contains one of the following elements (see [Purpose2Choice](#) on page 124 for details)

Index	Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		124
	Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		125

1.4.3.22 SupplementaryData <SplmtryData>

Presence: [0..*]

Definition: Additional information that cannot be captured in the structured elements and/or any other specific block.

Impacted by: [C35 SupplementaryDataRule](#)

SupplementaryData <SplmtryData> contains the following elements (see [SupplementaryData1 on page 123](#) for details)

Index	Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
		PlaceAndName <PlcAndNm>	[0..1]	Text		124
		Envelope <Envlp>	[1..1]	(External Schema)		124

Constraints

- **SupplementaryDataRule**

This component may not be used without the explicit approval of a SEG and submission to the RA of ISO 20022 compliant structure(s) to be used in the Envelope element.

1.4.4 SupplementaryData <SplmtryData>

Presence: [0..*]

Definition: Additional information that cannot be captured in the structured elements and/or any other specific block.

Impacted by: [C35 SupplementaryDataRule](#)

SupplementaryData <SplmtryData> contains the following elements (see [SupplementaryData1 on page 123](#) for details)

Index	Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
		PlaceAndName <PlcAndNm>	[0..1]	Text		124
		Envelope <Envlp>	[1..1]	(External Schema)		124

Constraints

- **SupplementaryDataRule**

This component may not be used without the explicit approval of a SEG and submission to the RA of ISO 20022 compliant structure(s) to be used in the Envelope element.

2 Message Items Types

2.1 MessageComponents

2.1.1 Account

2.1.1.1 CashAccount40

Definition: Provides the details to identify an account.

Index	Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
		Identification <Id>	[0..1]	±		99
		Type <Tp>	[0..1]	±		100
		Currency <Ccy>	[0..1]	CodeSet		100
		Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		100
		Proxy <Prxy>	[0..1]	±		100

Constraints

- **IdentificationAndProxyGuideline**

If the account identification is not defined through a conventional identification such as an email address or a mobile number, then the proxy element should be used for the identification of the account.

- **IdentificationOrProxyPresenceRule**

Identification must be present or Proxy must be present. Both may be present.

Error handling:

- *Error severity:* Fatal
- *Error Code:* X00498
- *Error Text:* Missing account identification or account proxy.

2.1.1.1.1 Identification <Id>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Unique and unambiguous identification for the account between the account owner and the account servicer.

Identification <Id> contains one of the following elements (see [AccountIdentification4Choice](#) on page 103 for details)

Index	Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	{Or	IBAN <IBAN>	[1..1]	IdentifierSet		103
	Or}	Other <Othr>	[1..1]	±		103

2.1.1.1.2 Type <Tp>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Specifies the nature, or use of the account.

Type <Tp> contains one of the following elements (see [CashAccountType2Choice](#) on page 101 for details)

Index	Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		102
	Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		102

2.1.1.1.3 Currency <Ccy>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Identification of the currency in which the account is held.

Usage: Currency should only be used in case one and the same account number covers several currencies

and the initiating party needs to identify which currency needs to be used for settlement on the account.

Datatype: [ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyCode](#) on page 185

2.1.1.1.4 Name <Nm>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Name of the account, as assigned by the account servicing institution, in agreement with the account owner in order to provide an additional means of identification of the account.

Usage: The account name is different from the account owner name. The account name is used in certain user communities to provide a means of identifying the account, in addition to the account owner's identity and the account number.

Datatype: [Max70Text](#) on page 220

2.1.1.1.5 Proxy <Prxy>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Specifies an alternate assumed name for the identification of the account.

Proxy <Prxy> contains the following elements (see [ProxyAccountIdentification1](#) on page 101 for details)

Index	Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
		Type <Tp>	[0..1]			101
	{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		101
	Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		101
		Identification <Id>	[1..1]	Text		101

2.1.1.2 ProxyAccountIdentification1

Definition: Information related to a proxy identification of the account.

Index	Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
		Type <Tp>	[0..1]			101
	{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		101
	Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		101
		Identification <Id>	[1..1]	Text		101

2.1.1.2.1 Type <Tp>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Type of the proxy identification.

Type <Tp> contains one of the following **ProxyAccountType1Choice** elements

Index	Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		101
	Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		101

2.1.1.2.1.1 Code <Cd>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Name of the identification scheme, in a coded form as published in an external list.

Datatype: [ExternalProxyAccountType1Code on page 201](#)

2.1.1.2.1.2 Proprietary <Prtry>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Name of the identification scheme, in a free text form.

Datatype: [Max35Text on page 220](#)

2.1.1.2.2 Identification <Id>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Identification used to indicate the account identification under another specified name.

Datatype: [Max2048Text on page 219](#)

2.1.1.3 CashAccountType2Choice

Definition: Nature or use of the account.

Index	Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		102
	Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		102

2.1.1.3.1 Code <Cd>*Presence:* [1..1]*Definition:* Account type, in a coded form.*Datatype:* ExternalCashAccountType1Code on page 191**2.1.1.3.2 Proprietary <Prtry>***Presence:* [1..1]*Definition:* Nature or use of the account in a proprietary form.*Datatype:* Max35Text on page 220**2.1.1.4 GenericAccountIdentification1***Definition:* Information related to a generic account identification.

Index	Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
		Identification <Id>	[1..1]	Text		102
		SchemeName <SchmeNm>	[0..1]			102
	{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		102
	Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		103
		Issuer </ssr>	[0..1]	Text		103

2.1.1.4.1 Identification <Id>*Presence:* [1..1]*Definition:* Identification assigned by an institution.*Datatype:* Max34Text on page 220**2.1.1.4.2 SchemeName <SchmeNm>***Presence:* [0..1]*Definition:* Name of the identification scheme.**SchemeName <SchmeNm>** contains one of the following **AccountSchemeName1Choice** elements

Index	Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		102
	Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		103

2.1.1.4.2.1 Code <Cd>*Presence:* [1..1]*Definition:* Name of the identification scheme, in a coded form as published in an external list.*Datatype:* ExternalAccountIdentification1Code on page 190

2.1.1.4.2.2 Proprietary <Prtry>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Name of the identification scheme, in a free text form.

Datatype: [Max35Text on page 220](#)

2.1.1.4.3 Issuer <Issr>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Entity that assigns the identification.

Datatype: [Max35Text on page 220](#)

2.1.2 Account Identification

2.1.2.1 AccountIdentification4Choice

Definition: Specifies the unique identification of an account as assigned by the account servicer.

Index	Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	{Or	IBAN <IBAN>	[1..1]	IdentifierSet		103
	Or}	Other <Othr>	[1..1]	±		103

2.1.2.1.1 IBAN <IBAN>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: International Bank Account Number (IBAN) - identifier used internationally by financial institutions to uniquely identify the account of a customer. Further specifications of the format and content of the IBAN can be found in the standard ISO 13616 "Banking and related financial services - International Bank Account Number (IBAN)" version 1997-10-01, or later revisions.

Datatype: [IBAN2007Identifier on page 215](#)

2.1.2.1.2 Other <Othr>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Unique identification of an account, as assigned by the account servicer, using an identification scheme.

Other <Othr> contains the following elements (see [GenericAccountIdentification1 on page 102](#) for details)

Index	Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
		Identification <Id>	[1..1]	Text		102
		SchemeName <SchmeNm>	[0..1]			102
	{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		102
	Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		103
		Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		103

2.1.3 Amount

2.1.3.1 AmountType4Choice

Definition: Specifies the amount of money to be moved between the debtor and creditor, before deduction of charges, expressed in the currency as ordered by the initiating party.

Index	Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	{Or	InstructedAmount <InstdAmt>	[1..1]	Amount		104
	Or}	EquivalentAmount <EqvtAmt>	[1..1]			104
		Amount <Amt>	[1..1]	Amount		104
		CurrencyOfTransfer <CcyOfTrf>	[1..1]	CodeSet		104

2.1.3.1.1 InstructedAmount <InstdAmt>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Amount of money to be moved between the debtor and creditor, before deduction of charges, expressed in the currency as ordered by the initiating party.

Usage: This amount has to be transported unchanged through the transaction chain.

Datatype: [ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyAndAmount](#) on page 184

2.1.3.1.2 EquivalentAmount <EqvtAmt>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Amount of money to be moved between the debtor and creditor, expressed in the currency of the debtor's account, and the currency in which the amount is to be moved.

EquivalentAmount <EqvtAmt> contains the following **EquivalentAmount2** elements

Index	Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
		Amount <Amt>	[1..1]	Amount		104
		CurrencyOfTransfer <CcyOfTrf>	[1..1]	CodeSet		104

2.1.3.1.2.1 Amount <Amt>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Amount of money to be moved between debtor and creditor, before deduction of charges, expressed in the currency of the debtor's account, and to be moved in a different currency.

Usage: The first agent will convert the equivalent amount into the amount to be moved.

Datatype: [ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyAndAmount](#) on page 184

2.1.3.1.2.2 CurrencyOfTransfer <CcyOfTrf>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Specifies the currency of the to be transferred amount, which is different from the currency of the debtor's account.

Datatype: [ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyCode](#) on page 185

2.1.4 Date Period

2.1.4.1 DatePeriod2

Definition: Range of time defined by a start date and an end date.

Index	Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
		FromDate <FrDt>	[1..1]	Date		105
		ToDate <ToDt>	[1..1]	Date		105

2.1.4.1.1 FromDate <FrDt>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Start date of the range.

Datatype: [ISODate](#) on page 214

2.1.4.1.2 ToDate <ToDt>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: End date of the range.

Datatype: [ISODate](#) on page 214

2.1.5 Date Time

2.1.5.1 DateAndDateTime2Choice

Definition: Choice between a date or a date and time format.

Index	Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	{Or	Date <Dt>	[1..1]	Date		105
	Or}	DateTime <DtTm>	[1..1]	DateTime		105

2.1.5.1.1 Date <Dt>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Specified date.

Datatype: [ISODate](#) on page 214

2.1.5.1.2 DateTime <DtTm>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Specified date and time.

Datatype: [ISODateTime](#) on page 214

2.1.6 Direct Debit

2.1.6.1 CreditTransferMandateData1

Definition: Provides further details related to a credit transfer mandate signed between the creditor and the debtor.

Index	Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
		MandateIdentification <MndtId>	[0..1]	Text		106
		Type <Tp>	[0..1]	±		106
		DateOfSignature <DtOfSgntr>	[0..1]	Date		107
		DateOfVerification <DtOfVrfctn>	[0..1]	DateTime		107
		ElectronicSignature <ElctrncSgntr>	[0..1]	Binary		107
		FirstPaymentDate <FrstPmtDt>	[0..1]	Date		107
		FinalPaymentDate <FnlPmtDt>	[0..1]	Date		107
		Frequency <Frqcy>	[0..1]	±		108
		Reason <Rsn>	[0..1]			108
	{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		108
	Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		108

2.1.6.1.1 MandateIdentification <MndtId>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Unique identification, as assigned by the creditor, to unambiguously identify the mandate.

Datatype: [Max35Text](#) on page 220

2.1.6.1.2 Type <Tp>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Specifies the type of mandate, such as paper, electronic or scheme.

Type <Tp> contains the following elements (see [MandateTypeInformation2](#) on page 120 for details)

Index	Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
		ServiceLevel <SvcLvl>	[0..1]			120
	{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		120
	Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		121
		LocalInstrument <LclInstrm>	[0..1]			121
	{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		121
	Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		121
		CategoryPurpose <CtgyPurp>	[0..1]			121
	{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		121
	Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		122
		Classification <Clsfctn>	[0..1]	±		122

2.1.6.1.3 DateOfSignature <DtOfSgntr>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Date on which the credit transfer mandate has been signed by the debtor.

Datatype: [ISODate](#) on page 214

2.1.6.1.4 DateOfVerification <DtOfVrfctn>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Date on which the credit transfer mandate has been verified.

Datatype: [ISODateTime](#) on page 214

2.1.6.1.5 ElectronicSignature <ElctrncSgntr>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Additional security provisions, such as a digital signature, as provided by the debtor.

Datatype: [Max10KBinary](#) on page 184

2.1.6.1.6 FirstPaymentDate <FrstPmtDt>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Date of the first payment of a recurrent credit transfer as per the mandate.

Datatype: [ISODate](#) on page 214

2.1.6.1.7 FinalPaymentDate <FnIPmtDt>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Date of the final payment of a recurrent credit transfer as per the mandate.

Datatype: [ISODate](#) on page 214

2.1.6.1.8 Frequency <Frqcy>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Regularity with which credit transfer instructions are to be created and processed.

Frequency <Frqcy> contains one of the following elements (see [Frequency36Choice](#) on page 115 for details)

Index	Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	{Or	Type <Tp>	[1..1]	CodeSet		116
	Or	Period <Prd>	[1..1]			116
		Type <Tp>	[1..1]	CodeSet		117
		CountPerPeriod <CntPerPrd>	[1..1]	Quantity		117
	Or}	PointInTime <PtInTm>	[1..1]			117
		Type <Tp>	[1..1]	CodeSet		117
		PointInTime <PtInTm>	[1..1]	Text		118

2.1.6.1.9 Reason <Rsn>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Reason for the setup of the credit transfer mandate.

Usage:

The reason will allow the user to distinguish between different mandates for the same creditor.

Reason <Rsn> contains one of the following **MandateSetupReason1Choice** elements

Index	Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		108
	Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		108

2.1.6.1.9.1 Code <Cd>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Reason for the mandate setup, as published in an external reason code list.

Datatype: [ExternalMandateSetupReason1Code](#) on page 199

2.1.6.1.9.2 Proprietary <Prtry>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Reason for the mandate setup, in a proprietary form.

Datatype: [Max70Text](#) on page 220

2.1.7 Financial Institution Identification

2.1.7.1 ClearingSystemMemberIdentification2

Definition: Unique identification, as assigned by a clearing system, to unambiguously identify a member of the clearing system.

Index	Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
		ClearingSystemIdentification <ClrSysId>	[0..1]	±		109
		MemberIdentification <Mmbld>	[1..1]	Text		109

2.1.7.1.1 ClearingSystemIdentification <ClrSysId>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Specification of a pre-agreed offering between clearing agents or the channel through which the payment instruction is processed.

ClearingSystemIdentification <ClrSysId> contains one of the following elements (see [ClearingSystemIdentification2Choice](#) on page 180 for details)

Index	Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		181
	Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		181

2.1.7.1.2 MemberIdentification <Mmbld>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Identification of a member of a clearing system.

Datatype: [Max35Text](#) on page 220

2.1.7.2 GenericFinancialIdentification1

Definition: Information related to an identification of a financial institution.

Index	Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
		Identification <Id>	[1..1]	Text		109
		SchemeName <SchmeNm>	[0..1]			110
	{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		110
	Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		110
		Issuer </ssr>	[0..1]	Text		110

2.1.7.2.1 Identification <Id>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Unique and unambiguous identification of a person.

Datatype: [Max35Text on page 220](#)

2.1.7.2.2 SchemeName <SchmeNm>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Name of the identification scheme.

SchemeName <SchmeNm> contains one of the following **FinancialIdentificationSchemeName1Choice** elements

Index	Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		110
	Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		110

2.1.7.2.2.1 Code <Cd>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Name of the identification scheme, in a coded form as published in an external list.

Datatype: [ExternalFinancialInstitutionIdentification1Code on page 197](#)

2.1.7.2.2.2 Proprietary <Prtry>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Name of the identification scheme, in a free text form.

Datatype: [Max35Text on page 220](#)

2.1.7.2.3 Issuer <Issr>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Entity that assigns the identification.

Datatype: [Max35Text on page 220](#)

2.1.7.3 BranchAndFinancialInstitutionIdentification8

Definition: Unique and unambiguous identification of a financial institution or a branch of a financial institution.

Index	Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
		FinancialInstitutionIdentification <FinInstnId>	[1..1]			111
		BICFI <BICFI>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		111
		ClearingSystemMemberIdentification <ClrSysMmbld>	[0..1]	±		112
		LEI <LEI>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		112
		Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		112
		PostalAddress <PstlAdr>	[0..1]	±		112
		Other <Othr>	[0..1]	±		113
		BranchIdentification <BrnchId>	[0..1]			114
		Identification <Id>	[0..1]	Text		114
		LEI <LEI>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		114
		Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		114
		PostalAddress <PstlAdr>	[0..1]	±		114

2.1.7.3.1 FinancialInstitutionIdentification <FinInstnId>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Unique and unambiguous identification of a financial institution, as assigned under an internationally recognised or proprietary identification scheme.

FinancialInstitutionIdentification <FinInstnId> contains the following **FinancialInstitutionIdentification23** elements

Index	Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
		BICFI <BICFI>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		111
		ClearingSystemMemberIdentification <ClrSysMmbld>	[0..1]	±		112
		LEI <LEI>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		112
		Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		112
		PostalAddress <PstlAdr>	[0..1]	±		112
		Other <Othr>	[0..1]	±		113

2.1.7.3.1.1 BICFI <BICFI>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Code allocated to a financial institution by the ISO 9362 Registration Authority as described in ISO 9362 "Banking - Banking telecommunication messages - Business identifier code (BIC)".

Datatype: BICFIDec2014Identifier on page 215

2.1.7.3.1.2 ClearingSystemMemberIdentification <ClrSysMmbld>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Information used to identify a member within a clearing system.

ClearingSystemMemberIdentification <ClrSysMmbld> contains the following elements (see [ClearingSystemMemberIdentification2](#) on page 109 for details)

Index	Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
		ClearingSystemIdentification <ClrSysId>	[0..1]	±		109
		MemberIdentification <Mmbld>	[1..1]	Text		109

2.1.7.3.1.3 LEI <LEI>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Legal entity identifier of the financial institution.

Datatype: [LEIIdentifier](#) on page 216

2.1.7.3.1.4 Name <Nm>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Name by which an agent is known and which is usually used to identify that agent.

Datatype: [Max140Text](#) on page 219

2.1.7.3.1.5 PostalAddress <PstlAdr>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Information that locates and identifies a specific address, as defined by postal services.

PostalAddress <PstIAdr> contains the following elements (see [PostalAddress27](#) on page 140 for details)

Index	Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
		AddressType <AdrTp>	[0..1]			140
	{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		141
	Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	±		141
		CareOf <CareOf>	[0..1]	Text		141
		Department <Dept>	[0..1]	Text		141
		SubDepartment <SubDept>	[0..1]	Text		142
		StreetName <StrtNm>	[0..1]	Text		142
		BuildingNumber <BldgNb>	[0..1]	Text		142
		BuildingName <BldgNm>	[0..1]	Text		142
		Floor <Flr>	[0..1]	Text		142
		UnitNumber <UnitNb>	[0..1]	Text		142
		PostBox <PstBx>	[0..1]	Text		142
		Room <Room>	[0..1]	Text		142
		PostCode <PstCd>	[0..1]	Text		143
		TownName <TwnNm>	[0..1]	Text		143
		TownLocationName <TwnLctnNm>	[0..1]	Text		143
		DistrictName <DstrctNm>	[0..1]	Text		143
		CountrySubDivision <CtrySubDvsn>	[0..1]	Text		143
		Country <Ctry>	[0..1]	CodeSet		143
		AddressLine <AdrLine>	[0..7]	Text		143

2.1.7.3.1.6 Other <Othr>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Unique identification of an agent, as assigned by an institution, using an identification scheme.

Other <Othr> contains the following elements (see [GenericFinancialIdentification1](#) on page 109 for details)

Index	Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
		Identification </d>	[1..1]	Text		109
		SchemeName <SchmeNm>	[0..1]			110
	{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		110
	Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		110
		Issuer </ssr>	[0..1]	Text		110

2.1.7.3.2 BranchIdentification <BrnchId>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Identifies a specific branch of a financial institution.

Usage: This component should be used in case the identification information in the financial institution component does not provide identification up to branch level.

BranchIdentification <BrnchId> contains the following **BranchData5** elements

Index	Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
		Identification </d>	[0..1]	Text		114
		LEI <LEI>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		114
		Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		114
		PostalAddress <PstlAdr>	[0..1]	±		114

2.1.7.3.2.1 Identification <Id>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Unique and unambiguous identification of a branch of a financial institution.

Datatype: [Max35Text](#) on page 220

2.1.7.3.2.2 LEI <LEI>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Legal entity identification for the branch of the financial institution.

Datatype: [LEIIdentifier](#) on page 216

2.1.7.3.2.3 Name <Nm>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Name by which an agent is known and which is usually used to identify that agent.

Datatype: [Max140Text](#) on page 219

2.1.7.3.2.4 PostalAddress <PstlAdr>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Information that locates and identifies a specific address, as defined by postal services.

PostalAddress <PstAdr> contains the following elements (see [PostalAddress27](#) on page 140 for details)

Index	Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
		AddressType <AdrTp>	[0..1]			140
	{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		141
	Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	±		141
		CareOf <CareOf>	[0..1]	Text		141
		Department <Dept>	[0..1]	Text		141
		SubDepartment <SubDept>	[0..1]	Text		142
		StreetName <StrtNm>	[0..1]	Text		142
		BuildingNumber <BldgNb>	[0..1]	Text		142
		BuildingName <BldgNm>	[0..1]	Text		142
		Floor <Flr>	[0..1]	Text		142
		UnitNumber <UnitNb>	[0..1]	Text		142
		PostBox <PstBx>	[0..1]	Text		142
		Room <Room>	[0..1]	Text		142
		PostCode <PstCd>	[0..1]	Text		143
		TownName <TwnNm>	[0..1]	Text		143
		TownLocationName <TwnLctnNm>	[0..1]	Text		143
		DistrictName <DstrctNm>	[0..1]	Text		143
		CountrySubDivision <CtrySubDvsn>	[0..1]	Text		143
		Country <Ctry>	[0..1]	CodeSet		143
		AddressLine <AdrLine>	[0..7]	Text		143

2.1.8 Frequency

2.1.8.1 Frequency36Choice

Definition: Choice of format for a frequency, for example, the frequency of payment.

Index	Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	{Or	Type <Tp>	[1..1]	CodeSet		116
	Or	Period <Prd>	[1..1]			116
		Type <Tp>	[1..1]	CodeSet		117
		CountPerPeriod <CntPerPrd>	[1..1]	Quantity		117
	Or}	PointInTime <PtInTm>	[1..1]			117
		Type <Tp>	[1..1]	CodeSet		117
		PointInTime <PtInTm>	[1..1]	Text		118

2.1.8.1.1 Type <Tp>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Specifies a frequency in terms of a specified period type.

Datatype: [Frequency6Code on page 204](#)

CodeName	Name	Definition
YEAR	Annual	Event takes place every year or once a year.
MNTH	Monthly	Event takes place every month or once a month.
QURT	Quarterly	Event takes place every three months or four times a year.
MIAN	SemiAnnual	Event takes place every six months or two times a year.
WEEK	Weekly	Event takes place once a week.
DAIL	Daily	Event takes place every day.
ADHO	Adhoc	Event takes place on request or as necessary.
INDA	IntraDay	Event takes place several times a day.
FRTN	Fortnightly	Event takes place every two weeks.

2.1.8.1.2 Period <Prd>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Specifies a frequency in terms of a count per period within a specified period type.

Period <Prd> contains the following **FrequencyPeriod1** elements

Index	Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
		Type <Tp>	[1..1]	CodeSet		117
		CountPerPeriod <CntPerPrd>	[1..1]	Quantity		117

2.1.8.1.2.1 Type <Tp>*Presence:* [1..1]*Definition:* Period for which the number of instructions are to be created and processed.*Datatype:* [Frequency6Code on page 204](#)

CodeName	Name	Definition
YEAR	Annual	Event takes place every year or once a year.
MNTH	Monthly	Event takes place every month or once a month.
QURT	Quarterly	Event takes place every three months or four times a year.
MIAN	SemiAnnual	Event takes place every six months or two times a year.
WEEK	Weekly	Event takes place once a week.
DAIL	Daily	Event takes place every day.
ADHO	Adhoc	Event takes place on request or as necessary.
INDA	IntraDay	Event takes place several times a day.
FRTN	Fortnightly	Event takes place every two weeks.

2.1.8.1.2.2 CountPerPeriod <CntPerPrd>*Presence:* [1..1]*Definition:* Number of instructions to be created and processed during the specified period.*Datatype:* [DecimalNumber on page 217](#)**2.1.8.1.3 PointInTime <PtInTm>***Presence:* [1..1]*Definition:* Specifies a frequency in terms of an exact point in time or moment within a specified period type.**PointInTime <PtInTm>** contains the following **FrequencyAndMoment1** elements

Index	Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
		Type <Tp>	[1..1]	CodeSet		117
		PointInTime <PtInTm>	[1..1]	Text		118

2.1.8.1.3.1 Type <Tp>*Presence:* [1..1]*Definition:* Period for which the number of instructions are to be created and processed.*Datatype:* [Frequency6Code on page 204](#)

CodeName	Name	Definition
YEAR	Annual	Event takes place every year or once a year.
MNTH	Monthly	Event takes place every month or once a month.
QURT	Quarterly	Event takes place every three months or four times a year.
MIAN	SemiAnnual	Event takes place every six months or two times a year.
WEEK	Weekly	Event takes place once a week.
DAIL	Daily	Event takes place every day.
ADHO	Adhoc	Event takes place on request or as necessary.
INDA	IntraDay	Event takes place several times a day.
FRTN	Fortnightly	Event takes place every two weeks.

2.1.8.1.3.2 PointInTime <PtInTm>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Further information on the exact point in time the event should take place.

Datatype: [Exact2NumericText on page 218](#)

2.1.9 Identification Information

2.1.9.1 GenericIdentification30

Definition: Information related to an identification, for example, party identification or account identification.

Index	Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
		Identification <Id>	[1..1]	Text		118
		Issuer <Issr>	[1..1]	Text		118
		SchemeName <SchmeNm>	[0..1]	Text		119

2.1.9.1.1 Identification <Id>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Proprietary information, often a code, issued by the data source scheme issuer.

Datatype: [Exact4AlphaNumericText on page 218](#)

2.1.9.1.2 Issuer <Issr>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Entity that assigns the identification.

Datatype: [Max35Text on page 220](#)

2.1.9.1.3 SchemeName <SchmeNm>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Short textual description of the scheme.

Datatype: [Max35Text on page 220](#)

2.1.9.2 GenericIdentification3

Definition: Information related to an identification, for example, party identification or account identification.

Index	Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
		Identification <Id>	[1..1]	Text		119
		Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		119

2.1.9.2.1 Identification <Id>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Name or number assigned by an entity to enable recognition of that entity, for example, account identifier.

Datatype: [Max35Text on page 220](#)

2.1.9.2.2 Issuer <Issr>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Entity that assigns the identification.

Datatype: [Max35Text on page 220](#)

2.1.10 Mandate

2.1.10.1 MandateClassification1Choice

Definition: Specifies the high level purpose of the instruction based on a set of pre-defined categories.

Usage: This is used by the initiating party to provide information concerning the processing of the payment. It is likely to trigger special processing by any of the agents involved in the payment chain.

Index	Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		119
	Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		120

2.1.10.1.1 Code <Cd>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Category purpose, as published in an external category purpose code list.

Datatype: [MandateClassification1Code on page 205](#)

CodeName	Name	Definition
FIXE	Fixed	Direct debit amount is fixed.
USGB	UsageBased	Direct debit amount is based on usage.
VARI	Variable	Direct debit amount is variable.

2.1.10.1.2 Proprietary <Prtry>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Category purpose, in a proprietary form.

Datatype: [Max35Text](#) on page 220

2.1.10.2 MandateTypeInformation2

Definition: Set of elements used to further detail the information related to the type of payment.

Index	Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
		ServiceLevel <SvcLvl>	[0..1]			120
	{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		120
	Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		121
		LocalInstrument <LclInstrm>	[0..1]			121
	{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		121
	Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		121
		CategoryPurpose <CtgyPurp>	[0..1]			121
	{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		121
	Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		122
		Classification <Clssfctn>	[0..1]	±		122

2.1.10.2.1 ServiceLevel <SvcLvl>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Agreement under which or rules under which the mandate resides.

ServiceLevel <SvcLvl> contains one of the following **ServiceLevel8Choice** elements

Index	Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		120
	Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		121

2.1.10.2.1.1 Code <Cd>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Specifies a pre-agreed service or level of service between the parties, as published in an external service level code list.

Datatype: [ExternalServiceLevel1Code on page 203](#)

2.1.10.2.1.2 Proprietary <Prtry>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Specifies a pre-agreed service or level of service between the parties, as a proprietary code.

Datatype: [Max35Text on page 220](#)

2.1.10.2.2 LocalInstrument <LclInstrm>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: User community specific instrument.

Usage: This element is used to specify a local instrument, local clearing option and/or further qualify the service or service level.

LocalInstrument <LclInstrm> contains one of the following **LocalInstrument2Choice** elements

Index	Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		121
	Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		121

2.1.10.2.2.1 Code <Cd>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Specifies the local instrument, as published in an external local instrument code list.

Datatype: [ExternalLocalInstrument1Code on page 199](#)

2.1.10.2.2.2 Proprietary <Prtry>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Specifies the local instrument, as a proprietary code.

Datatype: [Max35Text on page 220](#)

2.1.10.2.3 CategoryPurpose <CtgyPurp>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Specifies the high level purpose of the mandate based on a set of pre-defined categories.

CategoryPurpose <CtgyPurp> contains one of the following **CategoryPurpose1Choice** elements

Index	Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		121
	Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		122

2.1.10.2.3.1 Code <Cd>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Category purpose, as published in an external category purpose code list.

Datatype: [ExternalCategoryPurpose1Code on page 192](#)

2.1.10.2.3.2 Proprietary <Prtry>*Presence:* [1..1]*Definition:* Category purpose, in a proprietary form.*Datatype:* [Max35Text](#) on page 220**2.1.10.2.4 Classification <Clssfctn>***Presence:* [0..1]*Definition:* Type of direct debit instruction.**Classification <Clssfctn>** contains one of the following elements (see [MandateClassification1Choice](#) on page 119 for details)

Index	Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		119
	Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		120

2.1.11 Miscellaneous**2.1.11.1 OriginalGroupInformation29***Definition:* Unique and unambiguous identifier of the group of transactions as assigned by the original instructing party.

Index	Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
		OriginalMessageIdentification <OrgnlMsgId>	[1..1]	Text		122
		OriginalMessageNameIdentification <OrgnlMsgNmId>	[1..1]	Text		122
		OriginalCreationDateTime <OrgnlCreDtTm>	[0..1]	DateTime		122

2.1.11.1.1 OriginalMessageIdentification <OrgnlMsgId>*Presence:* [1..1]*Definition:* Point to point reference assigned by the original instructing party to unambiguously identify the original message.*Datatype:* [Max35Text](#) on page 220**2.1.11.1.2 OriginalMessageNameIdentification <OrgnlMsgNmId>***Presence:* [1..1]*Definition:* Specifies the original message name identifier to which the message refers, for example, pacs.003.001.01 or MT103.*Datatype:* [Max35Text](#) on page 220**2.1.11.1.3 OriginalCreationDateTime <OrgnlCreDtTm>***Presence:* [0..1]

Definition: Original date and time at which the message was created.

Datatype: [ISODatetime](#) on page 214

2.1.11.2 Authorisation1Choice

Definition: Provides the details on the user identification or any user key that allows to check if the initiating party is allowed to issue the transaction.

Index	Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		123
	Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		123

2.1.11.2.1 Code <Cd>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Specifies the authorisation, in a coded form.

Datatype: [Authorisation1Code](#) on page 187

CodeName	Name	Definition
AUTH	PreAuthorisedFile	Indicates a file has been pre authorised or approved within the originating customer environment and no further approval is required.
FDET	FileLevelAuthorisationDetails	Indicates that a file requires additional file level approval, with the ability to view both the payment information block and supporting customer credit transaction detail.
FSUM	FileLevelAuthorisationSummary	Indicates that a file requires additional file level approval, with the ability to view only the payment information block level information.
ILEV	InstructionLevelAuthorisation	Indicates that a file requires all customer transactions to be authorised or approved.

2.1.11.2.2 Proprietary <Prtry>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Specifies the authorisation, in a free text form.

Datatype: [Max128Text](#) on page 218

2.1.11.3 SupplementaryData1

Definition: Additional information that can not be captured in the structured fields and/or any other specific block.

Index	Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
		PlaceAndName <PlcAndNm>	[0..1]	Text		124
		Envelope <Envlp>	[1..1]	(External Schema)		124

Constraints

- **SupplementaryDataRule**

This component may not be used without the explicit approval of a SEG and submission to the RA of ISO 20022 compliant structure(s) to be used in the Envelope element.

2.1.11.3.1 PlaceAndName <PlcAndNm>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Unambiguous reference to the location where the supplementary data must be inserted in the message instance.

In the case of XML, this is expressed by a valid XPath.

Datatype: Max350Text on page 220

2.1.11.3.2 Envelope <Envlp>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Technical element wrapping the supplementary data.

Type: (External Schema)

Technical component that contains the validated supplementary data information. This technical envelope allows to segregate the supplementary data information from any other information.

2.1.11.4 Purpose2Choice

Definition: Specifies the underlying reason for the payment transaction.

Usage: Purpose is used by the end-customers, that is initiating party, (ultimate) debtor, (ultimate) creditor to provide information concerning the nature of the payment. Purpose is a content element, which is not used for processing by any of the agents involved in the payment chain.

Index	Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		124
	Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		125

2.1.11.4.1 Code <Cd>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Underlying reason for the payment transaction, as published in an external purpose code list.

Datatype: ExternalPurpose1Code on page 202

2.1.11.4.2 Proprietary <Prtry>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Purpose, in a proprietary form.

Datatype: Max35Text on page 220

2.1.12 Party Identification

2.1.12.1 PartyIdentification272

Definition: Specifies the identification of a person or an organisation.

Index	Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
		Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		126
		PostalAddress <PstlAdr>	[0..1]	±		127
		Identification <Id>	[0..1]			127
	{Or	OrganisationIdentification <OrgId>	[1..1]			128
		AnyBIC <AnyBIC>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		129
		LEI <LEI>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		129
		Other <Othr>	[0..*]			129
		Identification <Id>	[1..1]	Text		129
		SchemeName <SchmeNm>	[0..1]			130
	{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		130
	Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		130
		Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		130
	Or}	PrivateIdentification <PrvtId>	[1..1]			130
		DateAndPlaceOfBirth <DtAndPlcOfBirth>	[0..1]			131
		BirthDate <BirthDt>	[1..1]	Date		131
		ProvinceOfBirth <PrvcOfBirth>	[0..1]	Text		131
		CityOfBirth <CityOfBirth>	[1..1]	Text		131
		CountryOfBirth <CtryOfBirth>	[1..1]	CodeSet		132
		Other <Othr>	[0..*]			132
		Identification <Id>	[1..1]	Text		132
		SchemeName <SchmeNm>	[0..1]			132
	{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		132
	Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		133
		Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		133
		CountryOfResidence <CtryOfRes>	[0..1]	CodeSet		133
		ContactDetails <CtctDtls>	[0..1]	±		133

2.1.12.1.1 Name <Nm>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Name by which a party is known and which is usually used to identify that party.

Datatype: Max140Text on page 219

2.1.12.1.2 PostalAddress <PstlAdr>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Information that locates and identifies a specific address, as defined by postal services.

PostalAddress <PstlAdr> contains the following elements (see [PostalAddress27](#) on page 140 for details)

Index	Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
		AddressType <AdrTp>	[0..1]			140
	{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		141
	Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	±		141
		CareOf <CareOf>	[0..1]	Text		141
		Department <Dept>	[0..1]	Text		141
		SubDepartment <SubDept>	[0..1]	Text		142
		StreetName <StrtNm>	[0..1]	Text		142
		BuildingNumber <BldgNb>	[0..1]	Text		142
		BuildingName <BldgNm>	[0..1]	Text		142
		Floor <Flr>	[0..1]	Text		142
		UnitNumber <UnitNb>	[0..1]	Text		142
		PostBox <PstBx>	[0..1]	Text		142
		Room <Room>	[0..1]	Text		142
		PostCode <PstCd>	[0..1]	Text		143
		TownName <TwnNm>	[0..1]	Text		143
		TownLocationName <TwnLctnNm>	[0..1]	Text		143
		DistrictName <DstrctNm>	[0..1]	Text		143
		CountrySubDivision <CtrySubDvsn>	[0..1]	Text		143
		Country <Ctry>	[0..1]	CodeSet		143
		AddressLine <AdrLine>	[0..7]	Text		143

2.1.12.1.3 Identification <Id>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Unique and unambiguous identification of a party.

Identification <Id> contains one of the following **Party52Choice** elements

Index	Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	{Or	OrganisationIdentification <OrgId>	[1..1]			128
		AnyBIC <AnyBIC>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		129
		LEI <LEI>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		129
		Other <Othr>	[0..*]			129
		Identification <Id>	[1..1]	Text		129
		SchemeName <SchmeNm>	[0..1]			130
	{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		130
	Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		130
		Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		130
	Or}	PrivateIdentification <PrvtId>	[1..1]			130
		DateAndPlaceOfBirth <DtAndPlcOfBirth>	[0..1]			131
		BirthDate <BirthDt>	[1..1]	Date		131
		ProvinceOfBirth <PrvcOfBirth>	[0..1]	Text		131
		CityOfBirth <CityOfBirth>	[1..1]	Text		131
		CountryOfBirth <CtryOfBirth>	[1..1]	CodeSet		132
		Other <Othr>	[0..*]			132
		Identification <Id>	[1..1]	Text		132
		SchemeName <SchmeNm>	[0..1]			132
	{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		132
	Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		133
		Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		133

2.1.12.1.3.1 OrganisationIdentification <OrgId>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Unique and unambiguous way to identify an organisation.

OrganisationIdentification <OrgId> contains the following **OrganisationIdentification39** elements

Index	Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
		AnyBIC <AnyBIC>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		129
		LEI <LEI>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		129
		Other <Othr>	[0..*]			129
		Identification <Id>	[1..1]	Text		129
		SchemeName <SchmeNm>	[0..1]			130
	{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		130
	Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		130
		Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		130

2.1.12.1.3.1.1 AnyBIC <AnyBIC>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Business identification code of the organisation.

Datatype: AnyBICDec2014Identifier on page 214

2.1.12.1.3.1.2 LEI <LEI>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Legal entity identification as an alternate identification for a party.

Datatype: LEIIdentifier on page 216

2.1.12.1.3.1.3 Other <Othr>

Presence: [0..*]

Definition: Unique identification of an organisation, as assigned by an institution, using an identification scheme.

Other <Othr> contains the following **GenericOrganisationIdentification3** elements

Index	Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
		Identification <Id>	[1..1]	Text		129
		SchemeName <SchmeNm>	[0..1]			130
	{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		130
	Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		130
		Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		130

2.1.12.1.3.1.3.1 Identification <Id>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Identification assigned by an institution.

Datatype: Max256Text on page 219

2.1.12.1.3.1.3.2 SchemeName <SchmeNm>*Presence:* [0..1]*Definition:* Name of the identification scheme.

SchemeName <SchmeNm> contains one of the following **OrganisationIdentificationSchemeName1Choice** elements

Index	Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		130
	Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		130

2.1.12.1.3.1.3.2.1 Code <Cd>*Presence:* [1..1]*Definition:* Name of the identification scheme, in a coded form as published in an external list.*Datatype:* [ExternalOrganisationIdentification1Code on page 200](#)**2.1.12.1.3.1.3.2.2 Proprietary <Prtry>***Presence:* [1..1]*Definition:* Name of the identification scheme, in a free text form.*Datatype:* [Max35Text on page 220](#)**2.1.12.1.3.1.3.3 Issuer <Issr>***Presence:* [0..1]*Definition:* Entity that assigns the identification.*Datatype:* [Max35Text on page 220](#)**2.1.12.1.3.2 PrivateIdentification <PrvtId>***Presence:* [1..1]*Definition:* Unique and unambiguous identification of a person, for example a passport.

PrivateIdentification <PrvtId> contains the following **PersonIdentification18** elements

Index	Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
		DateAndPlaceOfBirth <DtAndPlcOfBirth>	[0..1]			131
		BirthDate <BirthDt>	[1..1]	Date		131
		ProvinceOfBirth <PrvcOfBirth>	[0..1]	Text		131
		CityOfBirth <CityOfBirth>	[1..1]	Text		131
		CountryOfBirth <CtryOfBirth>	[1..1]	CodeSet		132
		Other <Othr>	[0..*]			132
		Identification <Id>	[1..1]	Text		132
		SchemeName <SchmeNm>	[0..1]			132
	{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		132
	Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		133
		Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		133

2.1.12.1.3.2.1 DateAndPlaceOfBirth <DtAndPlcOfBirth>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Date and place of birth of a person.

DateAndPlaceOfBirth <DtAndPlcOfBirth> contains the following **DateAndPlaceOfBirth1** elements

Index	Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
		BirthDate <BirthDt>	[1..1]	Date		131
		ProvinceOfBirth <PrvcOfBirth>	[0..1]	Text		131
		CityOfBirth <CityOfBirth>	[1..1]	Text		131
		CountryOfBirth <CtryOfBirth>	[1..1]	CodeSet		132

2.1.12.1.3.2.1.1 BirthDate <BirthDt>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Date on which a person is born.

Datatype: ISODate on page 214

2.1.12.1.3.2.1.2 ProvinceOfBirth <PrvcOfBirth>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Province where a person was born.

Datatype: Max35Text on page 220

2.1.12.1.3.2.1.3 CityOfBirth <CityOfBirth>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: City where a person was born.

Datatype: [Max35Text on page 220](#)

2.1.12.1.3.2.1.4 CountryOfBirth <CtryOfBirth>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Country where a person was born.

Datatype: [CountryCode on page 190](#)

2.1.12.1.3.2.2 Other <Othr>

Presence: [0..*]

Definition: Unique identification of a person, as assigned by an institution, using an identification scheme.

Other <Othr> contains the following **GenericPersonIdentification2** elements

Index	Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
		Identification <Id>	[1..1]	Text		132
		SchemeName <SchmeNm>	[0..1]			132
	{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		132
	Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		133
		Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		133

2.1.12.1.3.2.2.1 Identification <Id>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Unique and unambiguous identification of a person.

Datatype: [Max256Text on page 219](#)

2.1.12.1.3.2.2.2 SchemeName <SchmeNm>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Name of the identification scheme.

SchemeName <SchmeNm> contains one of the following **PersonIdentificationSchemeName1Choice** elements

Index	Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		132
	Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		133

2.1.12.1.3.2.2.2.1 Code <Cd>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Name of the identification scheme, in a coded form as published in an external list.

Datatype: [ExternalPersonIdentification1Code on page 201](#)

2.1.12.1.3.2.2.2 Proprietary <Prtry>*Presence:* [1..1]*Definition:* Name of the identification scheme, in a free text form.*Datatype:* [Max35Text on page 220](#)**2.1.12.1.3.2.2.3 Issuer <Issr>***Presence:* [0..1]*Definition:* Entity that assigns the identification.*Datatype:* [Max35Text on page 220](#)**2.1.12.1.4 CountryOfResidence <CtryOfRes>***Presence:* [0..1]*Definition:* Country in which a person resides (the place of a person's home). In the case of a company, it is the country from which the affairs of that company are directed.*Datatype:* [CountryCode on page 190](#)**2.1.12.1.5 ContactDetails <CtctDtls>***Presence:* [0..1]*Definition:* Set of elements used to indicate how to contact the party.**ContactDetails <CtctDtls>** contains the following elements (see [Contact13 on page 137](#) for details)

Index	Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
		NamePrefix <NmPrfx>	[0..1]	CodeSet		137
		Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		138
		PhoneNumber <PhneNb>	[0..1]	Text		138
		MobileNumber <MobNb>	[0..1]	Text		138
		FaxNumber <FaxNb>	[0..1]	Text		138
		URLAddress <URLAdr>	[0..1]	Text		138
		EmailAddress <EmailAdr>	[0..1]	Text		138
		EmailPurpose <EmailPurp>	[0..1]	Text		138
		JobTitle <JobTitl>	[0..1]	Text		138
		Responsibility <Rspnsblty>	[0..1]	Text		139
		Department <Dept>	[0..1]	Text		139
		Other <Othr>	[0..*]			139
		ChannelType <ChanlTp>	[1..1]	Text		139
		Identification <Id>	[0..1]	Text		139
		PreferredMethod <PrefrdMtd>	[0..1]	CodeSet		139

2.1.13 Payment Type

2.1.13.1 PaymentTypeInformation27

Definition: Provides further details of the type of payment.

Index	Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
		InstructionPriority <InstrPrty>	[0..1]	CodeSet		134
		ClearingChannel <ClrChanl>	[0..1]	CodeSet		134
		ServiceLevel <SvcLvl>	[0..*]			135
	{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		135
	Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		135
		LocalInstrument <LclInstrm>	[0..1]			135
	{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		135
	Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		136
		SequenceType <SeqTp>	[0..1]	CodeSet		136
		CategoryPurpose <CtgyPurp>	[0..1]			136
	{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		136
	Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		136

2.1.13.1.1 InstructionPriority <InstrPrty>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Indicator of the urgency or order of importance that the instructing party would like the instructed party to apply to the processing of the instruction.

Datatype: [Priority2Code](#) on page 209

CodeName	Name	Definition
HIGH	High	Priority level is high.
NORM	Normal	Priority level is normal.

2.1.13.1.2 ClearingChannel <ClrChanl>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Specifies the clearing channel to be used to process the payment instruction.

Datatype: [ClearingChannel2Code](#) on page 189

CodeName	Name	Definition
RTGS	RealTimeGrossSettlementSystem	Clearing channel is a real-time gross settlement system.
RTNS	RealTimeNetSettlementSystem	Clearing channel is a real-time net settlement system.

CodeName	Name	Definition
MPNS	MassPaymentNetSystem	Clearing channel is a mass payment net settlement system.
BOOK	BookTransfer	Payment through internal book transfer.

2.1.13.1.3 ServiceLevel <SvcLvl>

Presence: [0..*]

Definition: Agreement under which or rules under which the transaction should be processed.

ServiceLevel <SvcLvl> contains one of the following **ServiceLevel8Choice** elements

Index	Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		135
	Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		135

2.1.13.1.3.1 Code <Cd>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Specifies a pre-agreed service or level of service between the parties, as published in an external service level code list.

Datatype: [ExternalServiceLevel1Code](#) on page 203

2.1.13.1.3.2 Proprietary <Prtry>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Specifies a pre-agreed service or level of service between the parties, as a proprietary code.

Datatype: [Max35Text](#) on page 220

2.1.13.1.4 LocalInstrument <LclInstrm>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: User community specific instrument.

Usage: This element is used to specify a local instrument, local clearing option and/or further qualify the service or service level.

LocalInstrument <LclInstrm> contains one of the following **LocalInstrument2Choice** elements

Index	Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		135
	Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		136

2.1.13.1.4.1 Code <Cd>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Specifies the local instrument, as published in an external local instrument code list.

Datatype: [ExternalLocalInstrument1Code](#) on page 199

2.1.13.1.4.2 Proprietary <Prtry>*Presence:* [1..1]*Definition:* Specifies the local instrument, as a proprietary code.*Datatype:* [Max35Text](#) on page 220**2.1.13.1.5 SequenceType <SeqTp>***Presence:* [0..1]*Definition:* Identifies the direct debit sequence, such as first, recurrent, final or one-off.*Datatype:* [SequenceType3Code](#) on page 210

CodeName	Name	Definition
FRST	First	First collection of a series of direct debit instructions.
RCUR	Recurring	Direct debit instruction where the debtor's authorisation is used for regular direct debit transactions initiated by the creditor.
FNAL	Final	Final collection of a series of direct debit instructions.
OOFF	OneOff	Direct debit instruction where the debtor's authorisation is used to initiate one single direct debit transaction.
RPRE	Represented	Collection used to re-present previously reversed or returned direct debit transactions.

2.1.13.1.6 CategoryPurpose <CtgyPurp>*Presence:* [0..1]*Definition:* Specifies the high level purpose of the instruction based on a set of pre-defined categories.

Usage: This is used by the initiating party to provide information concerning the processing of the payment. It is likely to trigger special processing by any of the agents involved in the payment chain.

CategoryPurpose <CtgyPurp> contains one of the following **CategoryPurpose1Choice** elements

Index	Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		136
	Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		136

2.1.13.1.6.1 Code <Cd>*Presence:* [1..1]*Definition:* Category purpose, as published in an external category purpose code list.*Datatype:* [ExternalCategoryPurpose1Code](#) on page 192**2.1.13.1.6.2 Proprietary <Prtry>***Presence:* [1..1]

Definition: Category purpose, in a proprietary form.

Datatype: [Max35Text on page 220](#)

2.1.14 Person Identification

2.1.14.1 Contact13

Definition: Specifies the details of the contact person.

Index	Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
		NamePrefix <NmPrfx>	[0..1]	CodeSet		137
		Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		138
		PhoneNumber <PhneNb>	[0..1]	Text		138
		MobileNumber <MobNb>	[0..1]	Text		138
		FaxNumber <FaxNb>	[0..1]	Text		138
		URLAddress <URLAdr>	[0..1]	Text		138
		EmailAddress <EmailAdr>	[0..1]	Text		138
		EmailPurpose <EmailPurp>	[0..1]	Text		138
		JobTitle <JobTitl>	[0..1]	Text		138
		Responsibility <Rspnsblty>	[0..1]	Text		139
		Department <Dept>	[0..1]	Text		139
		Other <Othr>	[0..*]			139
		ChannelType <ChanlTp>	[1..1]	Text		139
		Identification <Id>	[0..1]	Text		139
		PreferredMethod <PrefrdMtd>	[0..1]	CodeSet		139

2.1.14.1.1 NamePrefix <NmPrfx>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Specifies the terms used to formally address a person.

Datatype: [NamePrefix2Code on page 206](#)

CodeName	Name	Definition
DOCT	Doctor	Title of the person is Doctor or Dr.
MADM	Madam	Title of the person is Madam.
MISS	Miss	Title of the person is Miss.
MIST	Mister	Title of the person is Mister or Mr.
MIKS	GenderNeutral	Title of the person is gender neutral (Mx).

2.1.14.1.2 Name <Nm>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Name by which a party is known and which is usually used to identify that party.

Datatype: Max140Text on page 219

2.1.14.1.3 PhoneNumber <PhneNb>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Collection of information that identifies a phone number, as defined by telecom services.

Datatype: PhoneNumber on page 221

2.1.14.1.4 MobileNumber <MobNb>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Collection of information that identifies a mobile phone number, as defined by telecom services.

Datatype: PhoneNumber on page 221

2.1.14.1.5 FaxNumber <FaxNb>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Collection of information that identifies a FAX number, as defined by telecom services.

Datatype: PhoneNumber on page 221

2.1.14.1.6 URLAddress <URLAdr>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Address for the Universal Resource Locator (URL), for example an address used over the www (HTTP) service.

Datatype: Max2048Text on page 219

2.1.14.1.7 EmailAddress <EmailAdr>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Address for electronic mail (e-mail).

Datatype: Max256Text on page 219

2.1.14.1.8 EmailPurpose <EmailPurp>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Purpose for which an email address may be used.

Datatype: Max35Text on page 220

2.1.14.1.9 JobTitle <JobTitl>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Title of the function.

Datatype: Max35Text on page 220

2.1.14.1.10 Responsibility <Rspnsblty>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Role of a person in an organisation.

Datatype: [Max35Text on page 220](#)

2.1.14.1.11 Department <Dept>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Identification of a division of a large organisation or building.

Datatype: [Max70Text on page 220](#)

2.1.14.1.12 Other <Othr>

Presence: [0..*]

Definition: Contact details in another form.

Other <Othr> contains the following **OtherContact1** elements

Index	Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
		ChannelType <ChanITp>	[1..1]	Text		139
		Identification <Id>	[0..1]	Text		139

2.1.14.1.12.1 ChannelType <ChanITp>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Method used to contact the financial institution's contact for the specific tax region.

Datatype: [Max4Text on page 220](#)

2.1.14.1.12.2 Identification <Id>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Communication value such as phone number or email address.

Datatype: [Max128Text on page 218](#)

2.1.14.1.13 PreferredMethod <PrefrdMtd>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Preferred method used to reach the contact.

Datatype: [PreferredContactMethod2Code on page 208](#)

CodeName	Name	Definition
MAIL	Email	Preferred method used to reach the contact is per email.
FAXX	Fax	Preferred method used to reach the contact is per fax.
LETT	Letter	Preferred method used to reach the contact is per letter.

CodeName	Name	Definition
CELL	MobileOrCellPhone	Preferred method used to reach the contact is per mobile or cell phone.
ONLI	Online	Preferred method used to reach the contact is online.
PHON	Phone	Preferred method used to reach the contact is per phone.

2.1.15 Postal Address

2.1.15.1 PostalAddress27

Definition: Information that locates and identifies a specific address, as defined by postal services.

Index	Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
		AddressType <AdrTp>	[0..1]			140
	{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		141
	Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	±		141
		CareOf <CareOf>	[0..1]	Text		141
		Department <Dept>	[0..1]	Text		141
		SubDepartment <SubDept>	[0..1]	Text		142
		StreetName <StrtNm>	[0..1]	Text		142
		BuildingNumber <BldgNb>	[0..1]	Text		142
		BuildingName <BldgNm>	[0..1]	Text		142
		Floor <Flr>	[0..1]	Text		142
		UnitNumber <UnitNb>	[0..1]	Text		142
		PostBox <PstBx>	[0..1]	Text		142
		Room <Room>	[0..1]	Text		142
		PostCode <PstCd>	[0..1]	Text		143
		TownName <TwnNm>	[0..1]	Text		143
		TownLocationName <TwnLctnNm>	[0..1]	Text		143
		DistrictName <DstrctNm>	[0..1]	Text		143
		CountrySubDivision <CtrySubDvsn>	[0..1]	Text		143
		Country <Ctry>	[0..1]	CodeSet		143
		AddressLine <AdrLine>	[0..7]	Text		143

2.1.15.1.1 AddressType <AdrTp>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Identifies the nature of the postal address.

AddressType <AdrTp> contains one of the following **AddressType3Choice** elements

Index	Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		141
	Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	±		141

2.1.15.1.1.1 Code <Cd>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Type of address expressed as a code.

Datatype: [AddressType2Code](#) on page 186

CodeName	Name	Definition
ADDR	Postal	Address is the complete postal address.
PBOX	POBox	Address is a postal office (PO) box.
HOME	Residential	Address is the home address.
BIZZ	Business	Address is the business address.
MLTO	MailTo	Address is the address to which mail is sent.
DLVY	DeliveryTo	Address is the address to which delivery is to take place.

2.1.15.1.1.2 Proprietary <Prtry>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Type of address expressed as a proprietary code.

Proprietary <Prtry> contains the following elements (see [GenericIdentification30](#) on page 118 for details)

Index	Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
		Identification <Id>	[1..1]	Text		118
		Issuer <Issr>	[1..1]	Text		118
		SchemeName <SchmeNm>	[0..1]	Text		119

2.1.15.1.2 CareOf <CareOf>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Identifies an addressee that is accepting the correspondence for the intended recipient. Using care of ensures the correspondence reaches the right recipient rather than getting returned to the sender.

Datatype: [Max140Text](#) on page 219

2.1.15.1.3 Department <Dept>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Identification of a division of a large organisation or building.

Datatype: [Max70Text on page 220](#)

2.1.15.1.4 SubDepartment <SubDept>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Identification of a sub-division of a large organisation or building.

Datatype: [Max70Text on page 220](#)

2.1.15.1.5 StreetName <StrtNm>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Name of a street or thoroughfare.

Datatype: [Max140Text on page 219](#)

2.1.15.1.6 BuildingNumber <BldgNb>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Number that identifies the position of a building on a street.

Datatype: [Max16Text on page 219](#)

2.1.15.1.7 BuildingName <BldgNm>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Name of the building or house.

Datatype: [Max140Text on page 219](#)

2.1.15.1.8 Floor <Flr>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Floor or storey within a building.

Datatype: [Max70Text on page 220](#)

2.1.15.1.9 UnitNumber <UnitNb>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Identifies a flat or dwelling within the building.

Datatype: [Max16Text on page 219](#)

2.1.15.1.10 PostBox <PstBx>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Numbered box in a post office, assigned to a person or organisation, where letters are kept until called for.

Datatype: [Max16Text on page 219](#)

2.1.15.1.11 Room <Room>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Building room number.

Datatype: [Max70Text on page 220](#)

2.1.15.1.12 PostCode <PstCd>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Identifier consisting of a group of letters and/or numbers that is added to a postal address to assist the sorting of mail.

Datatype: [Max16Text on page 219](#)

2.1.15.1.13 TownName <TwnNm>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Name of a built-up area, with defined boundaries, and a local government.

Datatype: [Max140Text on page 219](#)

2.1.15.1.14 TownLocationName <TwnLctnNm>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Specific location name within the town.

Datatype: [Max140Text on page 219](#)

2.1.15.1.15 DistrictName <DstrctNm>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Identifies a subdivision within a country sub-division.

Datatype: [Max140Text on page 219](#)

2.1.15.1.16 CountrySubDivision <CtrySubDvsn>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Identifies a subdivision of a country such as state, region, county.

Datatype: [Max35Text on page 220](#)

2.1.15.1.17 Country <Ctry>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Nation with its own government.

Datatype: [CountryCode on page 190](#)

2.1.15.1.18 AddressLine <AdrLine>

Presence: [0..7]

Definition: Information that locates and identifies a specific address, as defined by postal services, presented in free format text.

Datatype: [Max70Text on page 220](#)

2.1.16 Remittance

2.1.16.1 RemittanceInformation22

Definition: Information supplied to enable the matching/reconciliation of an entry with the items that the payment is intended to settle, such as commercial invoices in an accounts' receivable system.

Index	Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
		Unstructured <Ustrd>	[0..*]	Text		144
		Structured <Strd>	[0..*]	±		144

2.1.16.1.1 Unstructured <Ustrd>

Presence: [0..*]

Definition: Information supplied to enable the matching/reconciliation of an entry with the items that the payment is intended to settle, such as commercial invoices in an accounts' receivable system, in an unstructured form.

Datatype: Max140Text on page 219

2.1.16.1.2 Structured <Strd>

Presence: [0..*]

Definition: Information supplied to enable the matching/reconciliation of an entry with the items that the payment is intended to settle, such as commercial invoices in an accounts' receivable system, in a structured form.

Structured <Strd> contains the following elements (see [StructuredRemittanceInformation18](#) on page 148 for details)

Index	Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
		ReferredDocumentInformation <RfrdDocInf>	[0..*]			152
		Type <Tp>	[0..1]			154
		CodeOrProprietary <CdOrPrtry>	[1..1]			154
	{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		154
	Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		154
		Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		154
		Number <Nb>	[0..1]	Text		155
		RelatedDate <RltdDt>	[0..1]			155
		Type <Tp>	[1..1]			155
	{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		155
	Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		155
		Date <Dt>	[1..1]	Date		155
		LineDetails <LineDtls>	[0..*]			156
		Identification <Id>	[1..*]			156
		Type <Tp>	[0..1]			157
		CodeOrProprietary <CdOrPrtry>	[1..1]			157
	{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		157
	Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		157
		Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		158
		Number <Nb>	[0..1]	Text		158
		RelatedDate <RltdDt>	[0..1]	Date		158
		Description <Desc>	[0..1]	Text		158
		Amount <Amt>	[0..1]			158
		RemittanceAmountAndType <RmtAmtAndTp>	[0..*]			159
		Type <Tp>	[1..1]			159
	{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		159
	Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		159
		Amount <Amt>	[1..1]	Amount		159
		AdjustmentAmountAndReason <AdjstmntAmtAndRsn>	[0..*]			159

Index	Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
		Amount <Amt>	[1..1]	Amount		160
		CreditDebitIndicator <CdtDbtInd>	[0..1]	CodeSet		160
		Reason <Rsn>	[0..1]	Text		160
		AdditionalInformation <AddtlInf>	[0..1]	Text		160
		ReferredDocumentAmount <RfrdDocAmt>	[0..1]			160
		RemittanceAmountAndType <RmtAmtAndTp>	[0..*]			161
		Type <Tp>	[1..1]			161
	{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		161
	Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		162
		Amount <Amt>	[1..1]	Amount		162
		AdjustmentAmountAndReason <AdjstmntAmtAndRsn>	[0..*]			162
		Amount <Amt>	[1..1]	Amount		162
		CreditDebitIndicator <CdtDbtInd>	[0..1]	CodeSet		162
		Reason <Rsn>	[0..1]	Text		162
		AdditionalInformation <AddtlInf>	[0..1]	Text		163
		CreditorReferenceInformation <CdtrRefInf>	[0..1]			163
		Type <Tp>	[0..1]			163
		CodeOrProprietary <CdOrPrtry>	[1..1]			163
	{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		164
	Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		164
		Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		164
		Reference <Ref>	[0..1]	Text		164
		Invoice <Invcr>	[0..1]	±		164
		Invoicee <Invcee>	[0..1]	±		165
		TaxRemittance <TaxRmt>	[0..1]			166
		Creditor <Cdtr>	[0..1]	±		168
		Debtor <Dbtr>	[0..1]	±		168
		UltimateDebtor <UltmtDbtr>	[0..1]	±		168
		AdministrationZone <AdmstnZone>	[0..1]	Text		169
		ReferenceNumber <RefNb>	[0..1]	Text		169
		Method <Mtd>	[0..1]	Text		169

Index	Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
		TotalTaxableBaseAmount <TtlTaxblBaseAmt>	[0..1]	Amount		169
		TotalTaxAmount <TtlTaxAmt>	[0..1]	Amount		169
		Date <Dt>	[0..1]	Date		169
		SequenceNumber <SeqNb>	[0..1]	Quantity		170
		Record <Rcrd>	[0..*]			170
		Type <Tp>	[0..1]	Text		170
		Category <Ctgy>	[0..1]	Text		171
		CategoryDetails <CtgyDtls>	[0..1]	Text		171
		DebtorStatus <DbtrSts>	[0..1]	Text		171
		CertificateIdentification <CertId>	[0..1]	Text		171
		FormsCode <FrmsCd>	[0..1]	Text		171
		Period <Prd>	[0..1]			171
		Year <Yr>	[0..1]	Year		171
		Type <Tp>	[0..1]	CodeSet		172
		FromDate <FrToDt>	[0..1]	±		172
		TaxAmount <TaxAmt>	[0..1]			173
		Rate <Rate>	[0..1]	Rate		173
		TaxableBaseAmount <TaxblBaseAmt>	[0..1]	Amount		173
		TotalAmount <TtlAmt>	[0..1]	Amount		173
		Details <Dtls>	[0..*]			173
		Period <Prd>	[0..1]			174
		Year <Yr>	[0..1]	Year		174
		Type <Tp>	[0..1]	CodeSet		174
		FromDate <FrToDt>	[0..1]	±		175
		Amount <Amt>	[1..1]	Amount		175
		AdditionalInformation <AddtlInf>	[0..1]	Text		175
		GarnishmentRemittance <GrnshmtRmt>	[0..1]			176
		Type <Tp>	[1..1]			176
		CodeOrProprietary <CdOrPrtry>	[1..1]			176
	{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		177
	Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		177

Index	Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
		Issuer </Issr>	[0..1]	Text		177
		Garnishee <Grnshee>	[0..1]	±		177
		GarnishmentAdministrator <GrnshmtAdmstr>	[0..1]	±		178
		ReferenceNumber <RefNb>	[0..1]	Text		179
		Date <Dt>	[0..1]	Date		180
		RemittedAmount <RmtdAmt>	[0..1]	Amount		180
		FamilyMedicalInsuranceIndicator <FmlyMdclInsrncInd>	[0..1]	Indicator		180
		EmployeeTerminationIndicator <MplyeeTermntnInd>	[0..1]	Indicator		180
		AdditionalRemittanceInformation <AddtlRmtInf>	[0..3]	Text		180

2.1.16.2 StructuredRemittanceInformation18

Definition: Information supplied to enable the matching/reconciliation of an entry with the items that the payment is intended to settle, such as commercial invoices in an accounts' receivable system, in a structured form.

Index	Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
		ReferredDocumentInformation <RfrdDocInf>	[0..*]			152
		Type <Tp>	[0..1]			154
		CodeOrProprietary <CdOrPrtry>	[1..1]			154
	{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		154
	Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		154
		Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		154
		Number <Nb>	[0..1]	Text		155
		RelatedDate <RltdDt>	[0..1]			155
		Type <Tp>	[1..1]			155
	{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		155
	Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		155
		Date <Dt>	[1..1]	Date		155
		LineDetails <LineDtls>	[0..*]			156
		Identification <Id>	[1..*]			156
		Type <Tp>	[0..1]			157
		CodeOrProprietary <CdOrPrtry>	[1..1]			157
	{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		157
	Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		157
		Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		158
		Number <Nb>	[0..1]	Text		158
		RelatedDate <RltdDt>	[0..1]	Date		158
		Description <Desc>	[0..1]	Text		158
		Amount <Amt>	[0..1]			158
		RemittanceAmountAndType <RmtAmtAndTp>	[0..*]			159
		Type <Tp>	[1..1]			159
	{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		159
	Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		159
		Amount <Amt>	[1..1]	Amount		159
		AdjustmentAmountAndReason <AdjstmntAmtAndRsn>	[0..*]			159
		Amount <Amt>	[1..1]	Amount		160
		CreditDebitIndicator <CdtDbtInd>	[0..1]	CodeSet		160

Index	Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
		Reason <Rsn>	[0..1]	Text		160
		AdditionalInformation <AddtlInf>	[0..1]	Text		160
		ReferredDocumentAmount <RfrdDocAmt>	[0..1]			160
		RemittanceAmountAndType <RmtAmtAndTp>	[0..*]			161
		Type <Tp>	[1..1]			161
	{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		161
	Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		162
		Amount <Amt>	[1..1]	Amount		162
		AdjustmentAmountAndReason <AdjstmntAmtAndRsn>	[0..*]			162
		Amount <Amt>	[1..1]	Amount		162
		CreditDebitIndicator <CdtDbtInd>	[0..1]	CodeSet		162
		Reason <Rsn>	[0..1]	Text		162
		AdditionalInformation <AddtlInf>	[0..1]	Text		163
		CreditorReferenceInformation <CdtrRefInf>	[0..1]			163
		Type <Tp>	[0..1]			163
		CodeOrProprietary <CdOrPrtry>	[1..1]			163
	{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		164
	Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		164
		Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		164
		Reference <Ref>	[0..1]	Text		164
		Invoice <Invcr>	[0..1]	±		164
		Invoicee <Invcee>	[0..1]	±		165
		TaxRemittance <TaxRmt>	[0..1]			166
		Creditor <Cdtr>	[0..1]	±		168
		Debtor <Dbtr>	[0..1]	±		168
		UltimateDebtor <UltmtDbtr>	[0..1]	±		168
		AdministrationZone <AdmstnZone>	[0..1]	Text		169
		ReferenceNumber <RefNb>	[0..1]	Text		169
		Method <Mtd>	[0..1]	Text		169
		TotalTaxableBaseAmount <TtlTaxblBaseAmt>	[0..1]	Amount		169
		TotalTaxAmount <TtlTaxAmt>	[0..1]	Amount		169

Index	Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
		Date <Dt>	[0..1]	Date		169
		SequenceNumber <SeqNb>	[0..1]	Quantity		170
		Record <Rcrd>	[0..*]			170
		Type <Tp>	[0..1]	Text		170
		Category <Ctgy>	[0..1]	Text		171
		CategoryDetails <CtgyDtls>	[0..1]	Text		171
		DebtorStatus <DbtrSts>	[0..1]	Text		171
		CertificateIdentification <CertId>	[0..1]	Text		171
		FormsCode <FrmsCd>	[0..1]	Text		171
		Period <Prd>	[0..1]			171
		Year <Yr>	[0..1]	Year		171
		Type <Tp>	[0..1]	CodeSet		172
		FromDate <FrToDt>	[0..1]	±		172
		TaxAmount <TaxAmt>	[0..1]			173
		Rate <Rate>	[0..1]	Rate		173
		TaxableBaseAmount <TaxblBaseAmt>	[0..1]	Amount		173
		TotalAmount <TtlAmt>	[0..1]	Amount		173
		Details <Dtls>	[0..*]			173
		Period <Prd>	[0..1]			174
		Year <Yr>	[0..1]	Year		174
		Type <Tp>	[0..1]	CodeSet		174
		FromDate <FrToDt>	[0..1]	±		175
		Amount <Amt>	[1..1]	Amount		175
		AdditionalInformation <AddtlInf>	[0..1]	Text		175
		GarnishmentRemittance <GrnshmtRmt>	[0..1]			176
		Type <Tp>	[1..1]			176
		CodeOrProprietary <CdOrPrtry>	[1..1]			176
	{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		177
	Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		177
		Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		177
		Garnishee <Grnshee>	[0..1]	±		177

Index	Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
		GarnishmentAdministrator <GrnshmtAdmstr>	[0..1]	±		178
		ReferenceNumber <RefNb>	[0..1]	Text		179
		Date <Dt>	[0..1]	Date		180
		RemittedAmount <RmtdAmt>	[0..1]	Amount		180
		FamilyMedicalInsuranceIndicator <FmlyMdclInsrncInd>	[0..1]	Indicator		180
		EmployeeTerminationIndicator <MplyeeTermntnInd>	[0..1]	Indicator		180
		AdditionalRemittanceInformation <AddtlRmtInf>	[0..3]	Text		180

2.1.16.2.1 ReferredDocumentInformation <RfrdDocInf>

Presence: [0..*]

Definition: Provides the identification and the content of the referred document.

ReferredDocumentInformation <RfrdDocInf> contains the following **ReferredDocumentInformation8** elements

Index	Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
		Type <Tp>	[0..1]			154
		CodeOrProprietary <CdOrPrtry>	[1..1]			154
	{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		154
	Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		154
		Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		154
		Number <Nb>	[0..1]	Text		155
		RelatedDate <RltdDt>	[0..1]			155
		Type <Tp>	[1..1]			155
	{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		155
	Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		155
		Date <Dt>	[1..1]	Date		155
		LineDetails <LineDtls>	[0..*]			156
		Identification <Id>	[1..*]			156
		Type <Tp>	[0..1]			157
		CodeOrProprietary <CdOrPrtry>	[1..1]			157
	{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		157
	Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		157
		Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		158
		Number <Nb>	[0..1]	Text		158
		RelatedDate <RltdDt>	[0..1]	Date		158
		Description <Desc>	[0..1]	Text		158
		Amount <Amt>	[0..1]			158
		RemittanceAmountAndType <RmtAmtAndTp>	[0..*]			159
		Type <Tp>	[1..1]			159
	{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		159
	Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		159
		Amount <Amt>	[1..1]	Amount		159
		AdjustmentAmountAndReason <AdjstmntAmtAndRsn>	[0..*]			159
		Amount <Amt>	[1..1]	Amount		160

Index	Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
		CreditDebitIndicator <CdtDbtInd>	[0..1]	CodeSet		160
		Reason <Rsn>	[0..1]	Text		160
		AdditionalInformation <AddtlInf>	[0..1]	Text		160

2.1.16.2.1.1 Type <Tp>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Specifies the type of referred document.

Type <Tp> contains the following **DocumentType1** elements

Index	Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
		CodeOrProprietary <CdOrPrtry>	[1..1]			154
	{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		154
	Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		154
		Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		154

2.1.16.2.1.1.1 CodeOrProprietary <CdOrPrtry>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Coded or proprietary format referred document type.

CodeOrProprietary <CdOrPrtry> contains one of the following **DocumentType2Choice** elements

Index	Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		154
	Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		154

2.1.16.2.1.1.1.1 Code <Cd>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Type of remittance document, as published in an external document type code set.

Datatype: [ExternalDocumentType1Code](#) on page 197

2.1.16.2.1.1.1.2 Proprietary <Prtry>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Type of remittance document, in a proprietary form.

Datatype: [Max35Text](#) on page 220

2.1.16.2.1.1.2 Issuer <Issr>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Identification of the issuer of the reference document type.

Datatype: [Max35Text](#) on page 220

2.1.16.2.1.2 Number <Nb>*Presence:* [0..1]*Definition:* Unique and unambiguous identification of the referred document.*Datatype:* [Max35Text](#) on page 220**2.1.16.2.1.3 RelatedDate <RltdDt>***Presence:* [0..1]*Definition:* Date and date type associated with the referred document.**RelatedDate <RltdDt>** contains the following **DateAndType1** elements

Index	Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
		Type <Tp>	[1..1]			155
	{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		155
	Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		155
		Date <Dt>	[1..1]	Date		155

2.1.16.2.1.3.1 Type <Tp>*Presence:* [1..1]*Definition:* Type of date associated with the referred document.**Type <Tp>** contains one of the following **DateType2Choice** elements

Index	Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		155
	Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		155

2.1.16.2.1.3.1.1 Code <Cd>*Presence:* [1..1]*Definition:* Specifies the date type, as published in an external date type code set.*Datatype:* [ExternalDateType1Code](#) on page 195**2.1.16.2.1.3.1.2 Proprietary <Prtry>***Presence:* [1..1]*Definition:* Specifies the date type, in a free-text form.*Datatype:* [Max35Text](#) on page 220**2.1.16.2.1.3.2 Date <Dt>***Presence:* [1..1]*Definition:* Date associated with the referred document.*Datatype:* [ISODate](#) on page 214

2.1.16.2.1.4 LineDetails <LineDtIs>*Presence:* [0..*]*Definition:* Set of elements used to provide the content of the referred document line.**LineDetails <LineDtIs>** contains the following **DocumentLineInformation2** elements

Index	Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
		Identification <Id>	[1..*]			156
		Type <Tp>	[0..1]			157
		CodeOrProprietary <CdOrPrtry>	[1..1]			157
	{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		157
	Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		157
		Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		158
		Number <Nb>	[0..1]	Text		158
		RelatedDate <RltdDt>	[0..1]	Date		158
		Description <Desc>	[0..1]	Text		158
		Amount <Amt>	[0..1]			158
		RemittanceAmountAndType <RmtAmtAndTp>	[0..*]			159
		Type <Tp>	[1..1]			159
	{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		159
	Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		159
		Amount <Amt>	[1..1]	Amount		159
		AdjustmentAmountAndReason <AdjstmntAmtAndRsn>	[0..*]			159
		Amount <Amt>	[1..1]	Amount		160
		CreditDebitIndicator <CdtDbtInd>	[0..1]	CodeSet		160
		Reason <Rsn>	[0..1]	Text		160
		AdditionalInformation <AddtlInf>	[0..1]	Text		160

2.1.16.2.1.4.1 Identification <Id>*Presence:* [1..*]*Definition:* Provides identification of the document line.

Identification <Id> contains the following **DocumentLineIdentification1** elements

Index	Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
		Type <Tp>	[0..1]			157
		CodeOrProprietary <CdOrPrtry>	[1..1]			157
	{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		157
	Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		157
		Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		158
		Number <Nb>	[0..1]	Text		158
		RelatedDate <RltdDt>	[0..1]	Date		158

2.1.16.2.1.4.1.1 Type <Tp>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Specifies the type of referred document line identification.

Type <Tp> contains the following **DocumentLineType1** elements

Index	Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
		CodeOrProprietary <CdOrPrtry>	[1..1]			157
	{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		157
	Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		157
		Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		158

2.1.16.2.1.4.1.1.1 CodeOrProprietary <CdOrPrtry>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Provides the type details of the referred document line identification.

CodeOrProprietary <CdOrPrtry> contains one of the following **DocumentLineType1Choice** elements

Index	Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		157
	Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		157

2.1.16.2.1.4.1.1.1.1 Code <Cd>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Line identification type in a coded form.

Datatype: [ExternalDocumentLineType1Code](#) on page 196

2.1.16.2.1.4.1.1.1.2 Proprietary <Prtry>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Proprietary identification of the type of the remittance document.

Datatype: Max35Text on page 220

2.1.16.2.1.4.1.1.2 Issuer <Issr>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Identification of the issuer of the reference document line identificationtype.

Datatype: Max35Text on page 220

2.1.16.2.1.4.1.2 Number <Nb>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Identification of the type specified for the referred document line.

Datatype: Max35Text on page 220

2.1.16.2.1.4.1.3 RelatedDate <RltdDt>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Date associated with the referred document line.

Datatype: ISODate on page 214

2.1.16.2.1.4.2 Description <Desc>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Description associated with the document line.

Datatype: Max2048Text on page 219

2.1.16.2.1.4.3 Amount <Amt>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Provides details on the amounts of the document line.

Amount <Amt> contains the following **RemittanceAmount4** elements

Index	Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
		RemittanceAmountAndType <RmtAmtAndTp>	[0..*]			159
		Type <Tp>	[1..1]			159
	{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		159
	Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		159
		Amount <Amt>	[1..1]	Amount		159
		AdjustmentAmountAndReason <AdjstmntAmtAndRsn>	[0..*]			159
		Amount <Amt>	[1..1]	Amount		160
		CreditDebitIndicator <CdtDbtInd>	[0..1]	CodeSet		160
		Reason <Rsn>	[0..1]	Text		160
		AdditionalInformation <AddtlInf>	[0..1]	Text		160

2.1.16.2.1.4.3.1 RemittanceAmountAndType <RmtAmtAndTp>*Presence:* [0..*]*Definition:* Type and amount of money for the referred document.**RemittanceAmountAndType <RmtAmtAndTp>** contains the following **DocumentAmount1** elements

Index	Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
		Type <Tp>	[1..1]			159
	{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		159
	Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		159
		Amount <Amt>	[1..1]	Amount		159

2.1.16.2.1.4.3.1.1 Type <Tp>*Presence:* [1..1]*Definition:* Defines the type of amount.**Type <Tp>** contains one of the following **DocumentAmountType1Choice** elements

Index	Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		159
	Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		159

2.1.16.2.1.4.3.1.1.1 Code <Cd>*Presence:* [1..1]*Definition:* Specifies the amount type, as published in an external referred amount code set.*Datatype:* [ExternalDocumentAmountType1Code](#) on page 196**2.1.16.2.1.4.3.1.1.2 Proprietary <Prtry>***Presence:* [1..1]*Definition:* Specifies the amount type, in a free-text form.*Datatype:* [Max35Text](#) on page 220**2.1.16.2.1.4.3.1.2 Amount <Amt>***Presence:* [1..1]*Definition:* Amount of money for the referred document.*Datatype:* [ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyAndAmount](#) on page 184**2.1.16.2.1.4.3.2 AdjustmentAmountAndReason <AdjstmntAmtAndRsn>***Presence:* [0..*]*Definition:* Specifies detailed information on the amount and reason of the adjustment.

AdjustmentAmountAndReason <AdjstmntAmtAndRsn> contains the following **DocumentAdjustment1** elements

Index	Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
		Amount <Amt>	[1..1]	Amount		160
		CreditDebitIndicator <CdtDbtInd>	[0..1]	CodeSet		160
		Reason <Rsn>	[0..1]	Text		160
		AdditionalInformation <AddtlInf>	[0..1]	Text		160

2.1.16.2.1.4.3.2.1 Amount <Amt>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Amount of money of the document adjustment.

Datatype: [ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyAndAmount on page 184](#)

2.1.16.2.1.4.3.2.2 CreditDebitIndicator <CdtDbtInd>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Specifies whether the adjustment must be subtracted or added to the total amount.

Datatype: [CreditDebitCode on page 190](#)

CodeName	Name	Definition
CRDT	Credit	Operation is an increase.
DBIT	Debit	Operation is a decrease.

2.1.16.2.1.4.3.2.3 Reason <Rsn>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Specifies the reason for the adjustment.

Datatype: [Max4Text on page 220](#)

2.1.16.2.1.4.3.2.4 AdditionalInformation <AddtlInf>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Provides further details on the document adjustment.

Datatype: [Max140Text on page 219](#)

2.1.16.2.2 ReferredDocumentAmount <RfrdDocAmt>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Provides details on the amounts of the referred document.

ReferredDocumentAmount <RfrdDocAmt> contains the following **RemittanceAmount4** elements

Index	Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
		RemittanceAmountAndType <RmtAmtAndTp>	[0..*]			161
		Type <Tp>	[1..1]			161
	{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		161
	Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		162
		Amount <Amt>	[1..1]	Amount		162
		AdjustmentAmountAndReason <AdjstmntAmtAndRsn>	[0..*]			162
		Amount <Amt>	[1..1]	Amount		162
		CreditDebitIndicator <CdtDbtInd>	[0..1]	CodeSet		162
		Reason <Rsn>	[0..1]	Text		162
		AdditionalInformation <AddtlInf>	[0..1]	Text		163

2.1.16.2.2.1 RemittanceAmountAndType <RmtAmtAndTp>

Presence: [0..*]

Definition: Type and amount of money for the referred document.

RemittanceAmountAndType <RmtAmtAndTp> contains the following **DocumentAmount1** elements

Index	Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
		Type <Tp>	[1..1]			161
	{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		161
	Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		162
		Amount <Amt>	[1..1]	Amount		162

2.1.16.2.2.1.1 Type <Tp>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Defines the type of amount.

Type <Tp> contains one of the following **DocumentAmountType1Choice** elements

Index	Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		161
	Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		162

2.1.16.2.2.1.1.1 Code <Cd>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Specifies the amount type, as published in an external referred amount code set.

Datatype: [ExternalDocumentAmountType1Code](#) on page 196

2.1.16.2.2.1.1.2 Proprietary <Prtry>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Specifies the amount type, in a free-text form.

Datatype: [Max35Text](#) on page 220

2.1.16.2.2.1.2 Amount <Amt>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Amount of money for the referred document.

Datatype: [ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyAndAmount](#) on page 184

2.1.16.2.2.2 AdjustmentAmountAndReason <AdjstmntAmtAndRsn>

Presence: [0..*]

Definition: Specifies detailed information on the amount and reason of the adjustment.

AdjustmentAmountAndReason <AdjstmntAmtAndRsn> contains the following **DocumentAdjustment1** elements

Index	Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
		Amount <Amt>	[1..1]	Amount		162
		CreditDebitIndicator <CdtDbtInd>	[0..1]	CodeSet		162
		Reason <Rsn>	[0..1]	Text		162
		AdditionalInformation <AddtlInf>	[0..1]	Text		163

2.1.16.2.2.2.1 Amount <Amt>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Amount of money of the document adjustment.

Datatype: [ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyAndAmount](#) on page 184

2.1.16.2.2.2.2 CreditDebitIndicator <CdtDbtInd>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Specifies whether the adjustment must be subtracted or added to the total amount.

Datatype: [CreditDebitCode](#) on page 190

CodeName	Name	Definition
CRDT	Credit	Operation is an increase.
DBIT	Debit	Operation is a decrease.

2.1.16.2.2.2.3 Reason <Rsn>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Specifies the reason for the adjustment.

Datatype: [Max4Text](#) on page 220

2.1.16.2.2.2.4 AdditionalInformation <AddtlInf>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Provides further details on the document adjustment.

Datatype: Max140Text on page 219

2.1.16.2.3 CreditorReferenceInformation <CdtrRefInf>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Reference information provided by the creditor to allow the identification of the underlying documents.

CreditorReferenceInformation <CdtrRefInf> contains the following **CreditorReferenceInformation3** elements

Index	Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
		Type <Tp>	[0..1]			163
		CodeOrProprietary <CdOrPrtry>	[1..1]			163
	{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		164
	Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		164
		Issuer </ssr>	[0..1]	Text		164
		Reference <Ref>	[0..1]	Text		164

2.1.16.2.3.1 Type <Tp>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Specifies the type of creditor reference.

Type <Tp> contains the following **CreditorReferenceType3** elements

Index	Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
		CodeOrProprietary <CdOrPrtry>	[1..1]			163
	{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		164
	Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		164
		Issuer </ssr>	[0..1]	Text		164

2.1.16.2.3.1.1 CodeOrProprietary <CdOrPrtry>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Coded or proprietary format creditor reference type.

CodeOrProprietary <CdOrPrtry> contains one of the following **CreditorReferenceType2Choice** elements

Index	Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		164
	Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		164

2.1.16.2.3.1.1.1 Code <Cd>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Type of creditor reference, as published in an external creditor reference type code set.

Datatype: [ExternalCreditorReferenceType1Code](#) on page 194

2.1.16.2.3.1.1.2 Proprietary <Prtry>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Type of creditor reference, in a proprietary form.

Datatype: [Max35Text](#) on page 220

2.1.16.2.3.1.2 Issuer <Issr>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Entity that assigns the credit reference type.

Datatype: [Max35Text](#) on page 220

2.1.16.2.3.2 Reference <Ref>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Unique reference, as assigned by the creditor, to unambiguously refer to the payment transaction.

Usage: If available, the initiating party should provide this reference in the structured remittance information, to enable reconciliation by the creditor upon receipt of the amount of money.

If the business context requires the use of a creditor reference or a payment remit identification, and only one identifier can be passed through the end-to-end chain, the creditor's reference or payment remittance identification should be quoted in the end-to-end transaction identification.

Datatype: [Max35Text](#) on page 220

2.1.16.2.4 Invoicer <Invcr>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Identification of the organisation issuing the invoice, when it is different from the creditor or ultimate creditor.

Invoicee <Invcr> contains the following elements (see [PartyIdentification272](#) on page 125 for details)

Index	Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
		Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		126
		PostalAddress <PstlAdr>	[0..1]	±		127
		Identification <Id>	[0..1]			127
	{Or	OrganisationIdentification <OrgId>	[1..1]			128
		AnyBIC <AnyBIC>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		129
		LEI <LEI>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		129
		Other <Othr>	[0..*]			129
		Identification <Id>	[1..1]	Text		129
		SchemeName <SchmeNm>	[0..1]			130
	{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		130
	Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		130
		Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		130
	Or}	PrivateIdentification <PrvtId>	[1..1]			130
		DateAndPlaceOfBirth <DtAndPlcOfBirth>	[0..1]			131
		BirthDate <BirthDt>	[1..1]	Date		131
		ProvinceOfBirth <PrvcOfBirth>	[0..1]	Text		131
		CityOfBirth <CityOfBirth>	[1..1]	Text		131
		CountryOfBirth <CtryOfBirth>	[1..1]	CodeSet		132
		Other <Othr>	[0..*]			132
		Identification <Id>	[1..1]	Text		132
		SchemeName <SchmeNm>	[0..1]			132
	{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		132
	Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		133
		Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		133
		CountryOfResidence <CtryOfRes>	[0..1]	CodeSet		133
		ContactDetails <CtctDtls>	[0..1]	±		133

2.1.16.2.5 Invoicee <Invcee>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Identification of the party to whom an invoice is issued, when it is different from the debtor or ultimate debtor.

Invoicee <Invcee> contains the following elements (see [PartyIdentification272](#) on page 125 for details)

Index	Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
		Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		126
		PostalAddress <PstlAdr>	[0..1]	±		127
		Identification <Id>	[0..1]			127
	{Or	OrganisationIdentification <OrgId>	[1..1]			128
		AnyBIC <AnyBIC>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		129
		LEI <LEI>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		129
		Other <Othr>	[0..*]			129
		Identification <Id>	[1..1]	Text		129
		SchemeName <SchmeNm>	[0..1]			130
	{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		130
	Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		130
		Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		130
	Or}	PrivateIdentification <PrvtId>	[1..1]			130
		DateAndPlaceOfBirth <DtAndPlcOfBirth>	[0..1]			131
		BirthDate <BirthDt>	[1..1]	Date		131
		ProvinceOfBirth <PrvcOfBirth>	[0..1]	Text		131
		CityOfBirth <CityOfBirth>	[1..1]	Text		131
		CountryOfBirth <CtryOfBirth>	[1..1]	CodeSet		132
		Other <Othr>	[0..*]			132
		Identification <Id>	[1..1]	Text		132
		SchemeName <SchmeNm>	[0..1]			132
	{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		132
	Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		133
		Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		133
		CountryOfResidence <CtryOfRes>	[0..1]	CodeSet		133
		ContactDetails <CtctDtls>	[0..1]	±		133

2.1.16.2.6 TaxRemittance <TaxRmt>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Provides remittance information about a payment made for tax-related purposes.

TaxRemittance <TaxRmt> contains the following **TaxData1** elements

Index	Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
		Creditor <Cdtr>	[0..1]	±		168
		Debtor <Dbtr>	[0..1]	±		168
		UltimateDebtor <UltmtDbtr>	[0..1]	±		168
		AdministrationZone <AdmstnZone>	[0..1]	Text		169
		ReferenceNumber <RefNb>	[0..1]	Text		169
		Method <Mtd>	[0..1]	Text		169
		TotalTaxableBaseAmount <TtlTaxblBaseAmt>	[0..1]	Amount		169
		TotalTaxAmount <TtlTaxAmt>	[0..1]	Amount		169
		Date <Dt>	[0..1]	Date		169
		SequenceNumber <SeqNb>	[0..1]	Quantity		170
		Record <Rcrd>	[0..*]			170
		Type <Tp>	[0..1]	Text		170
		Category <Ctgy>	[0..1]	Text		171
		CategoryDetails <CtgyDtls>	[0..1]	Text		171
		DebtorStatus <DbtrSts>	[0..1]	Text		171
		CertificateIdentification <CertId>	[0..1]	Text		171
		FormsCode <FrmsCd>	[0..1]	Text		171
		Period <Prd>	[0..1]			171
		Year <Yr>	[0..1]	Year		171
		Type <Tp>	[0..1]	CodeSet		172
		FromDate <FrToDt>	[0..1]	±		172
		TaxAmount <TaxAmt>	[0..1]			173
		Rate <Rate>	[0..1]	Rate		173
		TaxableBaseAmount <TaxblBaseAmt>	[0..1]	Amount		173
		TotalAmount <TtlAmt>	[0..1]	Amount		173
		Details <Dtls>	[0..*]			173
		Period <Prd>	[0..1]			174
		Year <Yr>	[0..1]	Year		174
		Type <Tp>	[0..1]	CodeSet		174
		FromDate <FrToDt>	[0..1]	±		175

Index	Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
		Amount <Amt>	[1..1]	Amount		175
		AdditionalInformation <AddtlInf>	[0..1]	Text		175

2.1.16.2.6.1 Creditor <Cdtr>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Party on the credit side of the transaction to which the tax applies.

Creditor <Cdtr> contains the following elements (see [TaxParty1](#) on page 182 for details)

Index	Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
		TaxIdentification <TaxId>	[0..1]	Text		182
		RegistrationIdentification <RegnId>	[0..1]	Text		182
		TaxType <TaxTp>	[0..1]	Text		182

2.1.16.2.6.2 Debtor <Dbtr>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Party on the debit side of the transaction to which the tax applies.

Debtor <Dbtr> contains the following elements (see [TaxParty2](#) on page 181 for details)

Index	Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
		TaxIdentification <TaxId>	[0..1]	Text		181
		RegistrationIdentification <RegnId>	[0..1]	Text		181
		TaxType <TaxTp>	[0..1]	Text		181
		Authorisation <Authstn>	[0..1]			182
		Title <Titl>	[0..1]	Text		182
		Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		182

2.1.16.2.6.3 UltimateDebtor <UltmtDbtr>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Ultimate party that owes an amount of money to the (ultimate) creditor, in this case, to the taxing authority.

UltimateDebtor <UltmtDbtr> contains the following elements (see [TaxParty2](#) on page 181 for details)

Index	Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
		TaxIdentification <TaxId>	[0..1]	Text		181
		RegistrationIdentification <RegnId>	[0..1]	Text		181
		TaxType <TaxTp>	[0..1]	Text		181
		Authorisation <Authstn>	[0..1]			182
		Title <Titl>	[0..1]	Text		182
		Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		182

2.1.16.2.6.4 AdministrationZone <AdmstnZone>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Territorial part of a country to which the tax payment is related.

Datatype: [Max35Text](#) on page 220

2.1.16.2.6.5 ReferenceNumber <RefNb>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Tax reference information that is specific to a taxing agency.

Datatype: [Max140Text](#) on page 219

2.1.16.2.6.6 Method <Mtd>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Method used to indicate the underlying business or how the tax is paid.

Datatype: [Max35Text](#) on page 220

2.1.16.2.6.7 TotalTaxableBaseAmount <TtlTaxblBaseAmt>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Total amount of money on which the tax is based.

Datatype: [ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyAndAmount](#) on page 184

2.1.16.2.6.8 TotalTaxAmount <TtlTaxAmt>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Total amount of money as result of the calculation of the tax.

Datatype: [ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyAndAmount](#) on page 184

2.1.16.2.6.9 Date <Dt>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Date by which tax is due.

Datatype: [ISODate](#) on page 214

2.1.16.2.6.10 SequenceNumber <SeqNb>*Presence:* [0..1]*Definition:* Sequential number of the tax report.*Datatype:* Number on page 217**2.1.16.2.6.11 Record <Rcrd>***Presence:* [0..*]*Definition:* Record of tax details.**Record <Rcrd>** contains the following **TaxRecord3** elements

Index	Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
		Type <Tp>	[0..1]	Text		170
		Category <Ctgy>	[0..1]	Text		171
		CategoryDetails <CtgyDtls>	[0..1]	Text		171
		DebtorStatus <DbtrSts>	[0..1]	Text		171
		CertificateIdentification <CertId>	[0..1]	Text		171
		FormsCode <FrmsCd>	[0..1]	Text		171
		Period <Prd>	[0..1]			171
		Year <Yr>	[0..1]	Year		171
		Type <Tp>	[0..1]	CodeSet		172
		FromDate <FrToDt>	[0..1]	±		172
		TaxAmount <TaxAmt>	[0..1]			173
		Rate <Rate>	[0..1]	Rate		173
		TaxableBaseAmount <TaxblBaseAmt>	[0..1]	Amount		173
		TotalAmount <TtlAmt>	[0..1]	Amount		173
		Details <Dtls>	[0..*]			173
		Period <Prd>	[0..1]			174
		Year <Yr>	[0..1]	Year		174
		Type <Tp>	[0..1]	CodeSet		174
		FromDate <FrToDt>	[0..1]	±		175
		Amount <Amt>	[1..1]	Amount		175
		AdditionalInformation <AddtlInf>	[0..1]	Text		175

2.1.16.2.6.11.1 Type <Tp>*Presence:* [0..1]*Definition:* High level code to identify the type of tax details.

Datatype: [Max35Text on page 220](#)

2.1.16.2.6.11.2 Category <Ctgy>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Specifies the tax code as published by the tax authority.

Datatype: [Max35Text on page 220](#)

2.1.16.2.6.11.3 CategoryDetails <CtgyDtls>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Provides further details of the category tax code.

Datatype: [Max35Text on page 220](#)

2.1.16.2.6.11.4 DebtorStatus <DbtrSts>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Code provided by local authority to identify the status of the party that has drawn up the settlement document.

Datatype: [Max35Text on page 220](#)

2.1.16.2.6.11.5 CertificateIdentification <CertId>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Identification number of the tax report as assigned by the taxing authority.

Datatype: [Max35Text on page 220](#)

2.1.16.2.6.11.6 FormsCode <FrmsCd>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Identifies, in a coded form, on which template the tax report is to be provided.

Datatype: [Max35Text on page 220](#)

2.1.16.2.6.11.7 Period <Prd>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Set of elements used to provide details on the period of time related to the tax payment.

Period <Prd> contains the following **TaxPeriod3** elements

Index	Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
		Year <Yr>	[0..1]	Year		171
		Type <Tp>	[0..1]	CodeSet		172
		FromToDate <FrToDt>	[0..1]	±		172

2.1.16.2.6.11.7.1 Year <Yr>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Year related to the tax payment.

Datatype: [ISOYear on page 221](#)

2.1.16.2.6.11.7.2 Type <Tp>*Presence:* [0..1]*Definition:* Identification of the period related to the tax payment.*Datatype:* TaxRecordPeriod1Code on page 212

CodeName	Name	Definition
MM01	FirstMonth	Tax is related to the second month of the period.
MM02	SecondMonth	Tax is related to the first month of the period.
MM03	ThirdMonth	Tax is related to the third month of the period.
MM04	FourthMonth	Tax is related to the fourth month of the period.
MM05	FifthMonth	Tax is related to the fifth month of the period.
MM06	SixthMonth	Tax is related to the sixth month of the period.
MM07	SeventhMonth	Tax is related to the seventh month of the period.
MM08	EighthMonth	Tax is related to the eighth month of the period.
MM09	NinthMonth	Tax is related to the ninth month of the period.
MM10	TenthMonth	Tax is related to the tenth month of the period.
MM11	EleventhMonth	Tax is related to the eleventh month of the period.
MM12	TwelfthMonth	Tax is related to the twelfth month of the period.
QTR1	FirstQuarter	Tax is related to the first quarter of the period.
QTR2	SecondQuarter	Tax is related to the second quarter of the period.
QTR3	ThirdQuarter	Tax is related to the third quarter of the period.
QTR4	FourthQuarter	Tax is related to the forth quarter of the period.
HLF1	FirstHalf	Tax is related to the first half of the period.
HLF2	SecondHalf	Tax is related to the second half of the period.

2.1.16.2.6.11.7.3 FromToDate <FrToDt>*Presence:* [0..1]*Definition:* Range of time between a start date and an end date for which the tax report is provided.

FromDate <FrToDt> contains the following elements (see [DatePeriod2](#) on page 105 for details)

Index	Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
		FromDate <FrDt>	[1..1]	Date		105
		ToDate <ToDt>	[1..1]	Date		105

2.1.16.2.6.11.8 TaxAmount <TaxAmt>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Set of elements used to provide information on the amount of the tax record.

TaxAmount <TaxAmt> contains the following **TaxAmount3** elements

Index	Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
		Rate <Rate>	[0..1]	Rate		173
		TaxableBaseAmount <TaxblBaseAmt>	[0..1]	Amount		173
		TotalAmount <TtlAmt>	[0..1]	Amount		173
		Details <Dtls>	[0..*]			173
		Period <Prd>	[0..1]			174
		Year <Yr>	[0..1]	Year		174
		Type <Tp>	[0..1]	CodeSet		174
		FromDate <FrToDt>	[0..1]	±		175
		Amount <Amt>	[1..1]	Amount		175

2.1.16.2.6.11.8.1 Rate <Rate>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Rate used to calculate the tax.

Datatype: [PercentageRate](#) on page 217

2.1.16.2.6.11.8.2 TaxableBaseAmount <TaxblBaseAmt>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Amount of money on which the tax is based.

Datatype: [ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyAndAmount](#) on page 184

2.1.16.2.6.11.8.3 TotalAmount <TtlAmt>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Total amount that is the result of the calculation of the tax for the record.

Datatype: [ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyAndAmount](#) on page 184

2.1.16.2.6.11.8.4 Details <Dtls>

Presence: [0..*]

Definition: Set of elements used to provide details on the tax period and amount.

Details <DtIs> contains the following **TaxRecordDetails3** elements

Index	Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
		Period <Prd>	[0..1]			174
		Year <Yr>	[0..1]	Year		174
		Type <Tp>	[0..1]	CodeSet		174
		FromDate <FrToDt>	[0..1]	±		175
		Amount <Amt>	[1..1]	Amount		175

2.1.16.2.6.11.8.4.1 Period <Prd>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Set of elements used to provide details on the period of time related to the tax payment.

Period <Prd> contains the following **TaxPeriod3** elements

Index	Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
		Year <Yr>	[0..1]	Year		174
		Type <Tp>	[0..1]	CodeSet		174
		FromDate <FrToDt>	[0..1]	±		175

2.1.16.2.6.11.8.4.1.1 Year <Yr>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Year related to the tax payment.

Datatype: ISOYear on page 221

2.1.16.2.6.11.8.4.1.2 Type <Tp>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Identification of the period related to the tax payment.

Datatype: TaxRecordPeriod1Code on page 212

CodeName	Name	Definition
MM01	FirstMonth	Tax is related to the second month of the period.
MM02	SecondMonth	Tax is related to the first month of the period.
MM03	ThirdMonth	Tax is related to the third month of the period.
MM04	FourthMonth	Tax is related to the fourth month of the period.
MM05	FifthMonth	Tax is related to the fifth month of the period.

CodeName	Name	Definition
MM06	SixthMonth	Tax is related to the sixth month of the period.
MM07	SeventhMonth	Tax is related to the seventh month of the period.
MM08	EighthMonth	Tax is related to the eighth month of the period.
MM09	NinthMonth	Tax is related to the ninth month of the period.
MM10	TenthMonth	Tax is related to the tenth month of the period.
MM11	EleventhMonth	Tax is related to the eleventh month of the period.
MM12	TwelfthMonth	Tax is related to the twelfth month of the period.
QTR1	FirstQuarter	Tax is related to the first quarter of the period.
QTR2	SecondQuarter	Tax is related to the second quarter of the period.
QTR3	ThirdQuarter	Tax is related to the third quarter of the period.
QTR4	FourthQuarter	Tax is related to the forth quarter of the period.
HLF1	FirstHalf	Tax is related to the first half of the period.
HLF2	SecondHalf	Tax is related to the second half of the period.

2.1.16.2.6.11.8.4.1.3 FromToDate <FrToDt>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Range of time between a start date and an end date for which the tax report is provided.

FromToDate <FrToDt> contains the following elements (see [DatePeriod2](#) on page 105 for details)

Index	Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
		FromDate <FrDt>	[1..1]	Date		105
		ToDate <ToDt>	[1..1]	Date		105

2.1.16.2.6.11.8.4.2 Amount <Amt>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Underlying tax amount related to the specified period.

Datatype: [ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyAndAmount](#) on page 184

2.1.16.2.6.11.9 AdditionalInformation <AddtlInf>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Further details of the tax record.

Datatype: [Max140Text](#) on page 219

2.1.16.2.7 GarnishmentRemittance <GrnshmtRmt>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Provides remittance information about a payment for garnishment-related purposes.

GarnishmentRemittance <GrnshmtRmt> contains the following **Garnishment4** elements

Index	Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
		Type <Tp>	[1..1]			176
		CodeOrProprietary <CdOrPrtry>	[1..1]			176
	{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		177
	Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		177
		Issuer </ssr>	[0..1]	Text		177
		Garnishee <Grnshee>	[0..1]	±		177
		GarnishmentAdministrator <GrnshmtAdmstr>	[0..1]	±		178
		ReferenceNumber <RefNb>	[0..1]	Text		179
		Date <Dt>	[0..1]	Date		180
		RemittedAmount <RmtdAmt>	[0..1]	Amount		180
		FamilyMedicalInsuranceIndicator <FmlyMdclInsrncInd>	[0..1]	Indicator		180
		EmployeeTerminationIndicator <MplyeeTermtnInd>	[0..1]	Indicator		180

2.1.16.2.7.1 Type <Tp>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Specifies the type of garnishment.

Type <Tp> contains the following **GarnishmentType1** elements

Index	Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
		CodeOrProprietary <CdOrPrtry>	[1..1]			176
	{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		177
	Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		177
		Issuer </ssr>	[0..1]	Text		177

2.1.16.2.7.1.1 CodeOrProprietary <CdOrPrtry>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Provides the type details of the garnishment.

CodeOrProprietary <CdOrPrtry> contains one of the following **GarnishmentType1Choice** elements

Index	Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		177
	Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		177

2.1.16.2.7.1.1.1 Code <Cd>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Garnishment type in a coded form.

Would suggest this to be an External Code List to contain:

GNCS Garnishment from a third party payer for Child Support

GNDP Garnishment from a Direct Payer for Child Support

GTPP Garnishment from a third party payer to taxing agency.

Datatype: ExternalGarnishmentType1Code on page 198

2.1.16.2.7.1.1.2 Proprietary <Prtry>

Presence: [1..1]

Definition: Proprietary identification of the type of garnishment.

Datatype: Max35Text on page 220

2.1.16.2.7.1.2 Issuer <Issr>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Identification of the issuer of the garnishment type.

Datatype: Max35Text on page 220

2.1.16.2.7.2 Garnishee <Grnshee>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Ultimate party that owes an amount of money to the (ultimate) creditor, in this case, to the garnisher.

Garnishee <Grnshee> contains the following elements (see [PartyIdentification272](#) on page 125 for details)

Index	Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
		Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		126
		PostalAddress <PstlAdr>	[0..1]	±		127
		Identification <Id>	[0..1]			127
	{Or	OrganisationIdentification <OrgId>	[1..1]			128
		AnyBIC <AnyBIC>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		129
		LEI <LEI>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		129
		Other <Othr>	[0..*]			129
		Identification <Id>	[1..1]	Text		129
		SchemeName <SchmeNm>	[0..1]			130
	{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		130
	Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		130
		Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		130
	Or}	PrivateIdentification <PrvtId>	[1..1]			130
		DateAndPlaceOfBirth <DtAndPlcOfBirth>	[0..1]			131
		BirthDate <BirthDt>	[1..1]	Date		131
		ProvinceOfBirth <PrvcOfBirth>	[0..1]	Text		131
		CityOfBirth <CityOfBirth>	[1..1]	Text		131
		CountryOfBirth <CtryOfBirth>	[1..1]	CodeSet		132
		Other <Othr>	[0..*]			132
		Identification <Id>	[1..1]	Text		132
		SchemeName <SchmeNm>	[0..1]			132
	{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		132
	Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		133
		Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		133
		CountryOfResidence <CtryOfRes>	[0..1]	CodeSet		133
		ContactDetails <CtctDtls>	[0..1]	±		133

2.1.16.2.7.3 GarnishmentAdministrator <GrnshmtAdmstr>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Party on the credit side of the transaction who administers the garnishment on behalf of the ultimate beneficiary.

GarnishmentAdministrator <GrnshmtAdmstr> contains the following elements (see [PartyIdentification272](#) on page 125 for details)

Index	Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
		Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		126
		PostalAddress <PstlAdr>	[0..1]	±		127
		Identification <Id>	[0..1]			127
	{Or	OrganisationIdentification <OrgId>	[1..1]			128
		AnyBIC <AnyBIC>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		129
		LEI <LEI>	[0..1]	IdentifierSet		129
		Other <Othr>	[0..*]			129
		Identification <Id>	[1..1]	Text		129
		SchemeName <SchmeNm>	[0..1]			130
	{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		130
	Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		130
		Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		130
	Or}	PrivateIdentification <PrvtId>	[1..1]			130
		DateAndPlaceOfBirth <DtAndPlcOfBirth>	[0..1]			131
		BirthDate <BirthDt>	[1..1]	Date		131
		ProvinceOfBirth <PrvcOfBirth>	[0..1]	Text		131
		CityOfBirth <CityOfBirth>	[1..1]	Text		131
		CountryOfBirth <CtryOfBirth>	[1..1]	CodeSet		132
		Other <Othr>	[0..*]			132
		Identification <Id>	[1..1]	Text		132
		SchemeName <SchmeNm>	[0..1]			132
	{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		132
	Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		133
		Issuer <Issr>	[0..1]	Text		133
		CountryOfResidence <CtryOfRes>	[0..1]	CodeSet		133
		ContactDetails <CtctDtls>	[0..1]	±		133

2.1.16.2.7.4 ReferenceNumber <RefNb>

Presence: [0..1]

Definition: Reference information that is specific to the agency receiving the garnishment.

Datatype: [Max140Text](#) on page 219

2.1.16.2.7.5 Date <Dt>*Presence:* [0..1]*Definition:* Date of payment which garnishment was taken from.*Datatype:* [ISODate on page 214](#)**2.1.16.2.7.6 RemittedAmount <RmtdAmt>***Presence:* [0..1]*Definition:* Amount of money remitted for the referred document.*Datatype:* [ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyAndAmount on page 184](#)**2.1.16.2.7.7 FamilyMedicalInsuranceIndicator <FmlyMdclInsrncInd>***Presence:* [0..1]*Definition:* Indicates if the person to whom the garnishment applies (that is, the ultimate debtor) has family medical insurance coverage available.*Datatype:* One of the following values must be used (see [TrueFalseIndicator on page 216](#)):

- *Meaning When True:* True
- *Meaning When False:* False

2.1.16.2.7.8 EmployeeTerminationIndicator <MplyeeTermntnInd>*Presence:* [0..1]*Definition:* Indicates if the employment of the person to whom the garnishment applies (that is, the ultimate debtor) has been terminated.*Datatype:* One of the following values must be used (see [TrueFalseIndicator on page 216](#)):

- *Meaning When True:* True
- *Meaning When False:* False

2.1.16.2.8 AdditionalRemittanceInformation <AddtlRmtInf>*Presence:* [0..3]*Definition:* Additional information, in free text form, to complement the structured remittance information.*Datatype:* [Max140Text on page 219](#)

2.1.17 System Identification

2.1.17.1 ClearingSystemIdentification2Choice*Definition:* Choice of a clearing system identifier.

Index	Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
	{Or	Code <Cd>	[1..1]	CodeSet		181
	Or}	Proprietary <Prtry>	[1..1]	Text		181

2.1.17.1.1 Code <Cd>*Presence:* [1..1]*Definition:* Identification of a clearing system, in a coded form as published in an external list.*Datatype:* ExternalClearingSystemIdentification1Code on page 194**2.1.17.1.2 Proprietary <Prtry>***Presence:* [1..1]*Definition:* Identification code for a clearing system, that has not yet been identified in the list of clearing systems.*Datatype:* Max35Text on page 220**2.1.18 Tax****2.1.18.1 TaxParty2***Definition:* Details about the entity involved in the tax paid or to be paid.

Index	Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
		TaxIdentification <TaxId>	[0..1]	Text		181
		RegistrationIdentification <RegnId>	[0..1]	Text		181
		TaxType <TaxTp>	[0..1]	Text		181
		Authorisation <Authstn>	[0..1]			182
		Title <Titl>	[0..1]	Text		182
		Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		182

2.1.18.1.1 TaxIdentification <TaxId>*Presence:* [0..1]*Definition:* Tax identification number of the debtor.*Datatype:* Max35Text on page 220**2.1.18.1.2 RegistrationIdentification <RegnId>***Presence:* [0..1]*Definition:* Unique identification, as assigned by an organisation, to unambiguously identify a party.*Datatype:* Max35Text on page 220**2.1.18.1.3 TaxType <TaxTp>***Presence:* [0..1]*Definition:* Type of tax payer.*Datatype:* Max35Text on page 220

2.1.18.1.4 Authorisation <Authstn>*Presence:* [0..1]*Definition:* Details of the authorised tax paying party.**Authorisation <Authstn>** contains the following **TaxAuthorisation1** elements

Index	Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
		Title <Titl>	[0..1]	Text		182
		Name <Nm>	[0..1]	Text		182

2.1.18.1.4.1 Title <Titl>*Presence:* [0..1]*Definition:* Title or position of debtor or the debtor's authorised representative.*Datatype:* Max35Text on page 220**2.1.18.1.4.2 Name <Nm>***Presence:* [0..1]*Definition:* Name of the debtor or the debtor's authorised representative.*Datatype:* Max140Text on page 219**2.1.18.2 TaxParty1***Definition:* Details about the entity involved in the tax paid or to be paid.

Index	Or	MessageElement<XML Tag>	Mult.	Type	Constr. No.	Page
		TaxIdentification <TaxId>	[0..1]	Text		182
		RegistrationIdentification <RegnId>	[0..1]	Text		182
		TaxType <TaxTp>	[0..1]	Text		182

2.1.18.2.1 TaxIdentification <TaxId>*Presence:* [0..1]*Definition:* Tax identification number of the creditor.*Datatype:* Max35Text on page 220**2.1.18.2.2 RegistrationIdentification <RegnId>***Presence:* [0..1]*Definition:* Unique identification, as assigned by an organisation, to unambiguously identify a party.*Datatype:* Max35Text on page 220**2.1.18.2.3 TaxType <TaxTp>***Presence:* [0..1]*Definition:* Type of tax payer.

Datatype: [Max35Text](#) on page 220

2.2 Message Datatypes

2.2.1 Amount

2.2.1.1 ActiveCurrencyAndAmount

Definition: A number of monetary units specified in an active currency where the unit of currency is explicit and compliant with ISO 4217.

Type: Amount

This data type contains the following XML attribute:

Name	Attribute XML Name	Datatype
Currency	Ccy	ActiveCurrencyCode on page 185

Format

minInclusive	0
totalDigits	18
fractionDigits	5

Constraints

- **ActiveCurrency**

The currency code must be a valid active currency code, not yet withdrawn on the day the message containing the currency is exchanged. Valid active currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and are not yet withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

Error handling:

- *Error severity:* Fatal
- *Error Code:* D00005
- *Error Text:* Invalid currency code

- **CurrencyAmount**

The number of fractional digits (or minor unit of currency) must comply with ISO 4217.

Note: The decimal separator is a dot.

Error handling:

- *Error severity:* Fatal
- *Error Code:* D00007
- *Error Text:* Invalid currency code or too many decimal digits.

2.2.1.2 ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyAndAmount

Definition: A number of monetary units specified in an active or a historic currency where the unit of currency is explicit and compliant with ISO 4217.

Type: Amount

This data type contains the following XML attribute:

Name	Attribute XML Name	Datatype
Currency	Ccy	ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyCode on page 185

Format

minInclusive	0
totalDigits	18
fractionDigits	5

Constraints

- **ActiveOrHistoricCurrency**

The Currency Code must be registered, or have already been registered. Valid active or historic currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and may be or not be withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

Error handling:

- *Error severity:* Fatal
- *Error Code:* D00006
- *Error Text:* Invalid currency code.

- **CurrencyAmount**

The number of fractional digits (or minor unit of currency) must comply with ISO 4217.

Note: The decimal separator is a dot.

Error handling:

- *Error severity:* Fatal
- *Error Code:* D00007
- *Error Text:* Invalid currency code or too many decimal digits.

2.2.2 Binary

2.2.2.1 Max10KBinary

Definition: Binary data of 10K maximum.

Type: Binary

Format

minLength	1
maxLength	10240

2.2.3 CodeSet

2.2.3.1 ActiveCurrencyCode

Definition: A code allocated to a currency by a Maintenance Agency under an international identification scheme as described in the latest edition of the international standard ISO 4217 "Codes for the representation of currencies and funds".

Type: CodeSet

Format

pattern	[A-Z]{3,3}
---------	------------

Constraints

- **ActiveCurrency**

The currency code must be a valid active currency code, not yet withdrawn on the day the message containing the currency is exchanged. Valid active currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3) contiguous letters, and are not yet withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

Error handling:

- *Error severity:* Fatal
- *Error Code:* D00005
- *Error Text:* Invalid currency code

Restricts

ParentCurrencyCode on page 207

2.2.3.2 ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyCode

Definition: A code allocated to a currency by a Maintenance Agency under an international identification scheme, as described in the latest edition of the international standard ISO 4217 "Codes for the representation of currencies and funds".

Type: CodeSet

Format

pattern	[A-Z]{3,3}
---------	------------

Constraints

- **ActiveOrHistoricCurrency**

The Currency Code must be registered, or have already been registered. Valid active or historic currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, consist of three (3)

contiguous letters, and may be or not be withdrawn on the day the message containing the Currency is exchanged.

Error handling:

- *Error severity:* Fatal
- *Error Code:* D00006
- *Error Text:* Invalid currency code.

Restricts

ParentCurrencyCode on page 207

2.2.3.3 AddressType2Code

Definition: Specifies the type of address.

Type: CodeSet

CodeName	Name	Definition
ADDR	Postal	Address is the complete postal address.
PBOX	POBox	Address is a postal office (PO) box.
HOME	Residential	Address is the home address.
BIZZ	Business	Address is the business address.
MLTO	MailTo	Address is the address to which mail is sent.
DLVY	DeliveryTo	Address is the address to which delivery is to take place.

Restricts

AddressTypeCode on page 186

2.2.3.4 AddressTypeCode

Definition: Specifies the type of address.

Type: CodeSet

CodeName	Name	Definition
HOME	Residential	Address is the home address.
BIZZ	Business	Address is the business address.
ADDR	Postal	Address is the complete postal address.
PBOX	POBox	Address is a postal office (PO) box.
MLTO	MailTo	Address is the address to which mail is sent.
DLVY	DeliveryTo	Address is the address to which delivery is to take place.

Is restricted by

[AddressType2Code](#) on page 186

2.2.3.5 AmountDirectionCode

Definition: Specifies if an operation is an increase or a decrease or the result of a reversal operation.

Type: CodeSet

CodeName	Name	Definition
DBIT	Debit	Operation is a decrease.
CRDT	Credit	Operation is an increase.
RVDB	ReversalDebit	Credit entry used to reverse a previously booked debit entry.
RVCD	ReversalCredit	Debit entry used to reverse a previously booked credit entry.

Is restricted by

[CreditDebitCode](#) on page 190

2.2.3.6 Authorisation1Code

Definition: Specifies the level of approval depending on a number of factors, including payment type, threshold amount or local country or operations practice.

Type: CodeSet

CodeName	Name	Definition
AUTH	PreAuthorisedFile	Indicates a file has been pre authorised or approved within the originating customer environment and no further approval is required.
FDET	FileLevelAuthorisationDetails	Indicates that a file requires additional file level approval, with the ability to view both the payment information block and supporting customer credit transaction detail.
FSUM	FileLevelAuthorisationSummary	Indicates that a file requires additional file level approval, with the ability to view only the payment information block level information.
ILEV	InstructionLevelAuthorisation	Indicates that a file requires all customer transactions to be authorised or approved.

Restricts

[AuthorisationCode](#) on page 187

2.2.3.7 AuthorisationCode

Definition: Specifies the level of approval depending on a number of factors, including payment type, threshold amount or local country or operations practice.

Type: CodeSet

CodeName	Name	Definition
AUTH	PreAuthorisedFile	Indicates a file has been pre authorised or approved within the originating customer environment and no further approval is required.
FDET	FileLevelAuthorisationDetails	Indicates that a file requires additional file level approval, with the ability to view both the payment information block and supporting customer credit transaction detail.
FSUM	FileLevelAuthorisationSummary	Indicates that a file requires additional file level approval, with the ability to view only the payment information block level information.
ILEV	InstructionLevelAuthorisation	Indicates that a file requires all customer transactions to be authorised or approved.

Is restricted by

Authorisation1Code on page 187

2.2.3.8 ChargeBearerType1Code

Definition: Specifies which party(ies) will pay charges due for processing of the instruction.

Type: CodeSet

CodeName	Name	Definition
DEBT	BorneByDebtor	All transaction charges are to be borne by the debtor.
CRED	BorneByCreditor	All transaction charges are to be borne by the creditor.
SHAR	Shared	In a credit transfer context, means that transaction charges on the sender side are to be borne by the debtor, transaction charges on the receiver side are to be borne by the creditor. In a direct debit context, means that transaction charges on the sender side are to be borne by the creditor, transaction charges on the receiver side are to be borne by the debtor.
SLEV	FollowingServiceLevel	Charges are to be applied following the rules agreed in the service level and/or scheme.

Restricts

ChargeBearerTypeCode on page 188

2.2.3.9 ChargeBearerTypeCode

Definition: Specifies which party(ies) will pay charges due for processing of the instruction.

Type: CodeSet

CodeName	Name	Definition
DEBT	BorneByDebtor	All transaction charges are to be borne by the debtor.
CRED	BorneByCreditor	All transaction charges are to be borne by the creditor.
SHAR	Shared	In a credit transfer context, means that transaction charges on the sender side are to be borne by the debtor, transaction charges on the receiver side are to be borne by the creditor. In a direct debit context, means that transaction charges on the sender side are to be borne by the creditor, transaction charges on the receiver side are to be borne by the debtor.
SLEV	FollowingServiceLevel	Charges are to be applied following the rules agreed in the service level and/or scheme.

Is restricted by

[ChargeBearerType1Code on page 188](#)

2.2.3.10 ClearingChannel2Code

Definition: Specifies the clearing channel for the routing of the transaction, as part of the payment type identification.

Type: CodeSet

CodeName	Name	Definition
RTGS	RealTimeGrossSettlementSystem	Clearing channel is a real-time gross settlement system.
RTNS	RealTimeNetSettlementSystem	Clearing channel is a real-time net settlement system.
MPNS	MassPaymentNetSystem	Clearing channel is a mass payment net settlement system.
BOOK	BookTransfer	Payment through internal book transfer.

Restricts

[ClearingChannelCode on page 189](#)

2.2.3.11 ClearingChannelCode

Definition: Specifies the clearing channel for the routing of the transaction, as part of the payment type identification.

Type: CodeSet

CodeName	Name	Definition
RTGS	RealTimeGrossSettlementSystem	Clearing channel is a real-time gross settlement system.
RTNS	RealTimeNetSettlementSystem	Clearing channel is a real-time net settlement system.

CodeName	Name	Definition
MPNS	MassPaymentNetSystem	Clearing channel is a mass payment net settlement system.
BOOK	BookTransfer	Payment through internal book transfer.

Is restricted by

[ClearingChannel2Code on page 189](#)

2.2.3.12 CountryCode

Definition: Code to identify a country, a dependency, or another area of particular geopolitical interest, on the basis of country names obtained from the United Nations (ISO 3166, Alpha-2 code).

Type: CodeSet

Format

pattern [A-Z]{2,2}

Constraints

- **Country**

The code is checked against the list of country names obtained from the United Nations (ISO 3166, Alpha-2 code).

Error handling:

- *Error severity:* Fatal
- *Error Code:* D00004
- *Error Text:* Invalid Country Code.

2.2.3.13 CreditDebitCode

Definition: Specifies if an operation is an increase or a decrease.

Type: CodeSet

CodeName	Name	Definition
CRDT	Credit	Operation is an increase.
DBIT	Debit	Operation is a decrease.

Restricts

[AmountDirectionCode on page 187](#)

2.2.3.14 ExternalAccountIdentification1Code

Definition: Specifies the external account identification scheme name code in the format of character string with a maximum length of 4 characters.

The list of valid codes is an external code list published separately.

External code sets can be downloaded from www.iso20022.org.

Type: CodeSet

Format

minLength	1
maxLength	4

Restricts

ExternalAccountIdentificationCode on page 191

2.2.3.15 ExternalAccountIdentificationCode

Definition: Specifies the external account identification scheme name code in the format of character string with a maximum length of 4 characters.

The list of valid codes is an external code list published separately.

External code sets can be downloaded from www.iso20022.org.

Type: CodeSet

Format

minLength	1
maxLength	4

Is restricted by

ExternalAccountIdentification1Code on page 190

2.2.3.16 ExternalCashAccountType1Code

Definition: Specifies the nature, or use, of the cash account in the format of character string with a maximum length of 4 characters.

The list of valid codes is an external code list published separately.

External code sets can be downloaded from www.iso20022.org.

Type: CodeSet

Format

minLength	1
maxLength	4

Restricts

ExternalCashAccountTypeCode on page 191

2.2.3.17 ExternalCashAccountTypeCode

Definition: Specifies the nature, or use, of the cash account in the format of character string with a maximum length of 4 characters.

The list of valid codes is an external code list published separately.

External code sets can be downloaded from www.iso20022.org.

Type: CodeSet

Format

minLength	1
maxLength	4

Is restricted by

ExternalCashAccountType1Code on page 191

2.2.3.18 ExternalCashClearingSystem1Code

Definition: Specifies the cash clearing system, as published in an external cash clearing system code list.

External code sets can be downloaded from www.iso20022.org.

Type: CodeSet

Format

minLength	1
maxLength	3

Restricts

ExternalCashClearingSystemCode on page 192

2.2.3.19 ExternalCashClearingSystemCode

Definition: Specifies the cash clearing system, as published in an external cash clearing system code list.

External code sets can be downloaded from www.iso20022.org.

Type: CodeSet

Format

minLength	1
maxLength	4

Is restricted by

ExternalCashClearingSystem1Code on page 192

2.2.3.20 ExternalCategoryPurpose1Code

Definition: Specifies the category purpose, as published in an external category purpose code list.

External code sets can be downloaded from www.iso20022.org.

Type: CodeSet

Format

minLength	1
maxLength	4

Restricts

ExternalCategoryPurposeCode on page 193

2.2.3.21 ExternalCategoryPurposeCode

Definition: Specifies the category purpose, as published in an external category purpose code list.

External code sets can be downloaded from www.iso20022.org.

Type: CodeSet

Format

minLength	1
maxLength	4

Is restricted by

ExternalCategoryPurpose1Code on page 192

2.2.3.22 ExternalChargeType1Code

Definition: Specifies the nature, or use, of the charges in the format of character string with a maximum length of 4 characters.

The list of valid codes is an external code list published separately.

External code sets can be downloaded from www.iso20022.org.

Type: CodeSet

Format

minLength	1
maxLength	4

Restricts

ExternalChargeTypeCode on page 193

2.2.3.23 ExternalChargeTypeCode

Definition: Specifies the nature, or use, of the charges in the format of character string with a maximum length of 4 characters.

The list of valid codes is an external code set published separately.

External code sets can be downloaded from www.iso20022.org.

Type: CodeSet

Format

minLength	1
maxLength	4

Is restricted by

ExternalChargeType1Code on page 193

2.2.3.24 ExternalClearingSystemIdentification1Code

Definition: Specifies the clearing system identification code, as published in an external clearing system identification code list.

External code sets can be downloaded from www.iso20022.org.

Type: CodeSet

Format

minLength	1
maxLength	5

Restricts

ExternalClearingSystemIdentificationCode on page 194

2.2.3.25 ExternalClearingSystemIdentificationCode

Definition: Specifies the clearing system identification code, as published in an external clearing system identification code list.

External code sets can be downloaded from www.iso20022.org.

Type: CodeSet

Format

minLength	1
maxLength	5

Is restricted by

ExternalClearingSystemIdentification1Code on page 194

2.2.3.26 ExternalCreditorReferenceType1Code

Definition: Specifies the type of creditor reference as published in an external creditor reference type code set.

External code sets can be downloaded from www.iso20022.org.

Type: CodeSet

Format

minLength	1
maxLength	4

Restricts

ExternalCreditorReferenceTypeCode on page 195

2.2.3.27 ExternalCreditorReferenceTypeCode

Definition: Specifies the type of creditor reference as published in an external creditor reference type code set.

External code sets can be downloaded from www.iso20022.org.

Type: CodeSet

Format

minLength	1
maxLength	4

Is restricted by

ExternalCreditorReferenceType1Code on page 194

2.2.3.28 ExternalDateType1Code

Definition: Defines the type of date, as published in an external date type code list.

External code sets can be downloaded from www.iso20022.org.

Type: CodeSet

Format

minLength	1
maxLength	4

Restricts

ExternalDateTypeCode on page 195

2.2.3.29 ExternalDateTypeCode

Definition: Defines the type of date, as published in an external date type code list.

External code sets can be downloaded from www.iso20022.org.

Type: CodeSet

Format

minLength	1
maxLength	4

Is restricted by

[ExternalDateType1Code on page 195](#)

2.2.3.30 ExternalDocumentAmountType1Code

Definition: Specifies the nature, or use, of the amount, as published in an external document amount type code set.

External code sets can be downloaded from www.iso20022.org.

Type: CodeSet

Format

minLength	1
maxLength	4

Restricts

[ExternalDocumentAmountTypeCode on page 196](#)

2.2.3.31 ExternalDocumentAmountTypeCode

Definition: Specifies the nature, or use, of the amount, as published in an external document amount type code set.

External code sets can be downloaded from www.iso20022.org.

Type: CodeSet

Format

minLength	1
maxLength	4

Is restricted by

[ExternalDocumentAmountType1Code on page 196](#)

2.2.3.32 ExternalDocumentLineType1Code

Definition: Specifies the document line type as published in an external document type code list.

Type: CodeSet

Format

minLength	1
maxLength	4

Restricts

[ExternalDocumentLineTypeCode on page 197](#)

2.2.3.33 ExternalDocumentLineTypeCode

Definition: Specifies the document line type as published in an external document type code list.

Type: CodeSet

Format

minLength	1
maxLength	4

Is restricted by

ExternalDocumentLineType1Code on page 196

2.2.3.34 ExternalDocumentType1Code

Definition: Specifies the document type as published in an external document type code list.

External code sets can be downloaded from www.iso20022.org.

Type: CodeSet

Format

minLength	1
maxLength	4

Restricts

ExternalDocumentTypeCode on page 197

2.2.3.35 ExternalDocumentTypeCode

Definition: Specifies the document type as published in an external document type code list.

External code sets can be downloaded from www.iso20022.org.

Type: CodeSet

Format

minLength	1
maxLength	4

Is restricted by

ExternalDocumentType1Code on page 197

2.2.3.36 ExternalFinancialInstitutionIdentification1Code

Definition: Specifies the external financial institution identification scheme name code in the format of character string with a maximum length of 4 characters.

The list of valid codes is an external code list published separately.

External code sets can be downloaded from www.iso20022.org.

Type: CodeSet

Format

minLength	1
maxLength	4

Restricts

ExternalFinancialInstitutionIdentificationCode on page 198

2.2.3.37 ExternalFinancialInstitutionIdentificationCode

Definition: Specifies the external financial institution identification scheme name code in the format of character string with a maximum length of 4 characters.

The list of valid codes is an external code list published separately.

External code sets can be downloaded from www.iso20022.org.

Type: CodeSet

Format

minLength	1
maxLength	4

Is restricted by

ExternalFinancialInstitutionIdentification1Code on page 197

2.2.3.38 ExternalGarnishmentType1Code

Definition: Specifies the garnishment type as published in an external document type code list.

Type: CodeSet

Format

minLength	1
maxLength	4

Restricts

ExternalGarnishmentTypeCode on page 198

2.2.3.39 ExternalGarnishmentTypeCode

Definition: Specifies the garnishment type as published in an external document type code list.

Type: CodeSet

Format

minLength	1
maxLength	4

Is restricted by

[ExternalGarnishmentType1Code](#) on page 198

2.2.3.40 ExternalLocalInstrument1Code

Definition: Specifies the external local instrument code in the format of character string with a maximum length of 35 characters.

The list of valid codes is an external code list published separately.

External code sets can be downloaded from www.iso20022.org.

Type: CodeSet

Format

minLength	1
maxLength	35

Restricts

[ExternalLocalInstrumentCode](#) on page 199

2.2.3.41 ExternalLocalInstrumentCode

Definition: Specifies the external local instrument code in the format of character string with a maximum length of 35 characters.

The list of valid codes is an external code list published separately.

External code sets can be downloaded from www.iso20022.org.

Type: CodeSet

Format

minLength	1
maxLength	35

Is restricted by

[ExternalLocalInstrument1Code](#) on page 199

2.2.3.42 ExternalMandateSetupReason1Code

Definition: Specifies the external mandate setup reason code in the format of character string with a maximum length of 4 characters.

External code sets can be downloaded from www.iso20022.org.

Type: CodeSet

Format

minLength	1
maxLength	4

Restricts

[ExternalMandateSetupReasonCode](#) on page 200

2.2.3.43 ExternalMandateSetupReasonCode

Definition: Specifies the external mandate setup reason code in the format of character string with a maximum length of 4 characters.

External code sets can be downloaded from www.iso20022.org.

Type: CodeSet

Format

minLength	1
maxLength	4

Is restricted by

[ExternalMandateSetupReason1Code](#) on page 199

2.2.3.44 ExternalOrganisationIdentification1Code

Definition: Specifies the external organisation identification scheme name code in the format of character string with a maximum length of 4 characters.

The list of valid codes is an external code list published separately.

External code sets can be downloaded from www.iso20022.org.

Type: CodeSet

Format

minLength	1
maxLength	4

Restricts

[ExternalOrganisationIdentificationCode](#) on page 200

2.2.3.45 ExternalOrganisationIdentificationCode

Definition: Specifies the external organisation identification scheme name code in the format of character string with a maximum length of 4 characters.

The list of valid codes is an external code list published separately.

External code sets can be downloaded from www.iso20022.org.

Type: CodeSet

Format

minLength	1
maxLength	4

Is restricted by

[ExternalOrganisationIdentification1Code on page 200](#)

2.2.3.46 ExternalPersonIdentification1Code

Definition: Specifies the external person identification scheme name code in the format of character string with a maximum length of 4 characters.

The list of valid codes is an external code list published separately.

External code sets can be downloaded from www.iso20022.org.

Type: CodeSet

Format

minLength	1
maxLength	4

Restricts

[ExternalPersonIdentificationCode on page 201](#)

2.2.3.47 ExternalPersonIdentificationCode

Definition: Specifies the external person identification scheme name code in the format of character string with a maximum length of 4 characters.

The list of valid codes is an external code list published separately.

External code sets can be downloaded from www.iso20022.org.

Type: CodeSet

Format

minLength	1
maxLength	4

Is restricted by

[ExternalPersonIdentification1Code on page 201](#)

2.2.3.48 ExternalProxyAccountType1Code

Definition: Specifies the external proxy account type code, as published in the proxy account type external code set.

External code sets can be downloaded from www.iso20022.org.

Type: CodeSet

Format

minLength	1
maxLength	4

Restricts

[ExternalProxyAccountTypeCode on page 202](#)

2.2.3.49 ExternalProxyAccountTypeCode

Definition: Specifies the external proxy account type code, as published in the proxy account type external code set.

External code sets can be downloaded from www.iso20022.org.

Type: CodeSet

Format

minLength	1
maxLength	4

Is restricted by

[ExternalProxyAccountType1Code on page 201](#)

2.2.3.50 ExternalPurpose1Code

Definition: Specifies the external purpose code in the format of character string with a maximum length of 4 characters.

The list of valid codes is an external code list published separately.

External code sets can be downloaded from www.iso20022.org.

Type: CodeSet

Format

minLength	1
maxLength	4

Restricts

[ExternalPurposeCode on page 202](#)

2.2.3.51 ExternalPurposeCode

Definition: Specifies the external purpose code in the format of character string with a maximum length of 4 characters.

The list of valid codes is an external code list published separately.

External code sets can be downloaded from www.iso20022.org.

Type: CodeSet

Format

minLength	1
maxLength	4

Is restricted by

ExternalPurpose1Code on page 202

2.2.3.52 ExternalReversalReason1Code

Definition: Specifies the reversal reason, as published in an external reversal reason code list.

External code sets can be downloaded from www.iso20022.org.

Type: CodeSet

Format

minLength	1
maxLength	4

Restricts

ExternalReversalReasonCode on page 203

2.2.3.53 ExternalReversalReasonCode

Definition: Specifies the reversal reason, as published in an external reversal reason code list.

External code sets can be downloaded from www.iso20022.org.

Type: CodeSet

Format

minLength	1
maxLength	4

Is restricted by

ExternalReversalReason1Code on page 203

2.2.3.54 ExternalServiceLevel1Code

Definition: Specifies the external service level code in the format of character string with a maximum length of 4 characters.

The list of valid codes is an external code list published separately.

External code sets can be downloaded from www.iso20022.org.

Type: CodeSet

Format

minLength	1
maxLength	4

Restricts

ExternalServiceLevelCode on page 204

2.2.3.55 ExternalServiceLevelCode

Definition: Specifies the nature, or use, of the amount in the format of character string with a maximum length of 4 characters.

The list of valid codes is an external code list published separately.

External code sets can be downloaded from www.iso20022.org.

Type: CodeSet

Format

minLength	1
maxLength	4

Is restricted by

[ExternalServiceLevel1Code on page 203](#)

2.2.3.56 Frequency6Code

Definition: Specifies the regularity of an event.

Type: CodeSet

CodeName	Name	Definition
YEAR	Annual	Event takes place every year or once a year.
MNTH	Monthly	Event takes place every month or once a month.
QURT	Quarterly	Event takes place every three months or four times a year.
MIAN	SemiAnnual	Event takes place every six months or two times a year.
WEEK	Weekly	Event takes place once a week.
DAIL	Daily	Event takes place every day.
ADHO	Adhoc	Event takes place on request or as necessary.
INDA	IntraDay	Event takes place several times a day.
FRTN	Fortnightly	Event takes place every two weeks.

Restricts

[FrequencyCode on page 204](#)

2.2.3.57 FrequencyCode

Definition: Specifies the regularity of an event.

Type: CodeSet

CodeName	Name	Definition
YEAR	Annual	Event takes place every year or once a year.
MNTH	Monthly	Event takes place every month or once a month.
QURT	Quarterly	Event takes place every three months or four times a year.
MIAN	SemiAnnual	Event takes place every six months or two times a year.
WEEK	Weekly	Event takes place once a week.
DAIL	Daily	Event takes place every day.
ADHO	Adhoc	Event takes place on request or as necessary.
INDA	IntraDay	Event takes place several times a day.
OVNG	Overnight	Event takes place overnight.
TEND	TenDays	Event takes place every ten business days.
FRTN	Fortnightly	Event takes place every two weeks.
MOVE	TriggeredByMovement	Event takes place at the end of the day if there was a movement on the account, otherwise nothing is sent that day.
NEVR	Never	Event does never take place.
RATE	Rate	Event takes place based on a change of a rate.
CRED	OnCreditEvent	Event occurs due to a credit event occurring for an issuer.
UPFR	Upfront	Event that takes place at the initiation of a trade or agreement.
EXPI	OnExpiry	Event occurs on expiry of a financial contract.
HOUL	Hourly	Event takes place every hours.
TRIL	TriAnnual	Event takes place every four months or three times a year.
BIMN	Bimonthly	Event takes place every two months or six times a year.
ODMD	OnDemand	Event takes place on demand.
SHFT	Shift	Event associated with a shift.
TWWK	TwiceAWeek	Two times a week

Is restricted by

Frequency6Code on page 204

2.2.3.58 MandateClassification1Code

Definition: Specifies the type of direct debit amount, such as fixed or variable.

Type: CodeSet

CodeName	Name	Definition
FIXE	Fixed	Direct debit amount is fixed.
USGB	UsageBased	Direct debit amount is based on usage.
VARI	Variable	Direct debit amount is variable.

Restricts

[MandateClassificationCode on page 206](#)

2.2.3.59 MandateClassificationCode

Definition: Specifies the type of direct debit amount, such as fixed or variable.

Type: CodeSet

CodeName	Name	Definition
FIXE	Fixed	Direct debit amount is fixed.
VARI	Variable	Direct debit amount is variable.
USGB	UsageBased	Direct debit amount is based on usage.

Is restricted by

[MandateClassification1Code on page 205](#)

2.2.3.60 NamePrefix2Code

Definition: Specifies the terms used to formally address a person.

Type: CodeSet

CodeName	Name	Definition
DOCT	Doctor	Title of the person is Doctor or Dr.
MADM	Madam	Title of the person is Madam.
MISS	Miss	Title of the person is Miss.
MIST	Mister	Title of the person is Mister or Mr.
MIKS	GenderNeutral	Title of the person is gender neutral (Mx).

Restricts

[NamePrefixCode on page 206](#)

2.2.3.61 NamePrefixCode

Definition: Specifies the terms used to formally address a person.

Type: CodeSet

CodeName	Name	Definition
DOCT	Doctor	Title of the person is Doctor or Dr.

CodeName	Name	Definition
MIST	Mister	Title of the person is Mister or Mr.
MISS	Miss	Title of the person is Miss.
MADM	Madam	Title of the person is Madam.
MIKS	GenderNeutral	Title of the person is gender neutral (Mx).

Is restricted by

[NamePrefix2Code on page 206](#)

2.2.3.62 ParentCurrencyCode

Definition: Code allocated to a currency, by a maintenance agency, under an international identification scheme as described in the latest edition of the international standard ISO 4217 "Codes for the representation of currencies and funds". Valid currency codes are registered with the ISO 4217 Maintenance Agency, and consist of three contiguous letters.

Type: CodeSet

Format

pattern [A-Z]{3,3}

Is restricted by

[ActiveCurrencyCode on page 185](#), [ActiveOrHistoricCurrencyCode on page 185](#)

2.2.3.63 PaymentMethod4Code

Definition: Specifies the transfer method that will be used to transfer an amount of money.

Type: CodeSet

CodeName	Name	Definition
CHK	Cheque	Written order to a bank to pay a certain amount of money from one person to another person.
TRF	CreditTransfer	Transfer of an amount of money in the books of the account servicer.
DD	DirectDebit	Collection of an amount of money from the debtor's bank account by the creditor. The amount of money and dates of collections may vary.
TRA	TransferAdvice	Transfer of an amount of money in the books of the account servicer. An advice should be sent back to the account owner.

Restricts

[PaymentMethodCode on page 208](#)

2.2.3.64 PaymentMethodCode

Definition: Specifies the transfer method that will be used to transfer the cash.

Type: CodeSet

CodeName	Name	Definition
CHK	Cheque	Written order to a bank to pay a certain amount of money from one person to another person.
TRF	CreditTransfer	Transfer of an amount of money in the books of the account servicer.
DD	DirectDebit	Collection of an amount of money from the debtor's bank account by the creditor. The amount of money and dates of collections may vary.
TRA	TransferAdvice	Transfer of an amount of money in the books of the account servicer. An advice should be sent back to the account owner.
DIRE	Direct	Direct method.
CLAS	Classical	Classical method.

Is restricted by

PaymentMethod4Code on page 207

2.2.3.65 PreferredContactMethod2Code

Definition: Preferred method used to reach the individual contact within an organisation.

Type: CodeSet

CodeName	Name	Definition
MAIL	Email	Preferred method used to reach the contact is per email.
FAXX	Fax	Preferred method used to reach the contact is per fax.
LETT	Letter	Preferred method used to reach the contact is per letter.
CELL	MobileOrCellPhone	Preferred method used to reach the contact is per mobile or cell phone.
ONLI	Online	Preferred method used to reach the contact is online.
PHON	Phone	Preferred method used to reach the contact is per phone.

Restricts

PreferredContactMethodCode on page 208

2.2.3.66 PreferredContactMethodCode

Definition: Preferred method used to reach the individual contact within an organisation.

Type: CodeSet

CodeName	Name	Definition
LETT	Letter	Preferred method used to reach the contact is per letter.
MAIL	Email	Preferred method used to reach the contact is per email.
PHON	Phone	Preferred method used to reach the contact is per phone.
FAXX	Fax	Preferred method used to reach the contact is per fax.
CELL	MobileOrCellPhone	Preferred method used to reach the contact is per mobile or cell phone.
ONLI	Online	Preferred method used to reach the contact is online.

Is restricted by

[PreferredContactMethod2Code on page 208](#)

2.2.3.67 Priority2Code

Definition: Specifies the priority level of an event.

Type: CodeSet

CodeName	Name	Definition
HIGH	High	Priority level is high.
NORM	Normal	Priority level is normal.

Restricts

[PriorityCode on page 209](#)

2.2.3.68 Priority3Code

Definition: Specifies the priority level of an event.

Type: CodeSet

CodeName	Name	Definition
URGT	Urgent	Priority level is urgent (highest priority possible).
HIGH	High	Priority level is high.
NORM	Normal	Priority level is normal.

Restricts

[PriorityCode on page 209](#)

2.2.3.69 PriorityCode

Definition: Specifies the priority level of an event.

Type: CodeSet

CodeName	Name	Definition
URGT	Urgent	Priority level is urgent (highest priority possible).
HIGH	High	Priority level is high.
NORM	Normal	Priority level is normal.
LOWW	Low	Priority level is low.

Is restricted by

[Priority2Code](#) on page 209, [Priority3Code](#) on page 209

2.2.3.70 SequenceType3Code

Definition: Specifies the type of the current transaction that belongs to a sequence of transactions.

Type: CodeSet

CodeName	Name	Definition
FRST	First	First collection of a series of direct debit instructions.
RCUR	Recurring	Direct debit instruction where the debtor's authorisation is used for regular direct debit transactions initiated by the creditor.
FNAL	Final	Final collection of a series of direct debit instructions.
OOFF	OneOff	Direct debit instruction where the debtor's authorisation is used to initiate one single direct debit transaction.
RPRE	Represented	Collection used to re-present previously reversed or returned direct debit transactions.

Restricts

[SequenceTypeCode](#) on page 210

2.2.3.71 SequenceTypeCode

Definition: Specifies the type of the current transaction that belongs to a sequence of transactions.

Type: CodeSet

CodeName	Name	Definition
FRST	First	First collection of a series of direct debit instructions.
RCUR	Recurring	Direct debit instruction where the debtor's authorisation is used for regular direct debit transactions initiated by the creditor.
FNAL	Final	Final collection of a series of direct debit instructions.

CodeName	Name	Definition
OOFF	OneOff	Direct debit instruction where the debtor's authorisation is used to initiate one single direct debit transaction.
RPRE	Represented	Collection used to re-present previously reversed or returned direct debit transactions.

Is restricted by

SequenceType3Code on page 210

2.2.3.72 SettlementMethod1Code

Definition: Specifies the method used to settle the credit transfer instruction.

Type: CodeSet

CodeName	Name	Definition
INDA	InstructedAgent	Settlement is done by the agent instructed to execute a payment instruction.
INGA	InstructingAgent	Settlement is done by the agent instructing and forwarding the payment to the next party in the payment chain.
COVE	CoverMethod	Settlement is done through a cover payment.
CLRG	ClearingSystem	Settlement is done through a payment clearing system.

Restricts

SettlementMethodCode on page 211

2.2.3.73 SettlementMethodCode

Definition: Specifies the method used to settle the payment instruction.

Type: CodeSet

CodeName	Name	Definition
INDA	InstructedAgent	Settlement is done by the agent instructed to execute a payment instruction.
INGA	InstructingAgent	Settlement is done by the agent instructing and forwarding the payment to the next party in the payment chain.
COVE	CoverMethod	Settlement is done through a cover payment.
CLRG	ClearingSystem	Settlement is done through a payment clearing system.

Is restricted by

SettlementMethod1Code on page 211

2.2.3.74 TaxRecordPeriod1Code

Definition: Specifies the period related to the tax payment.

Type: CodeSet

CodeName	Name	Definition
MM01	FirstMonth	Tax is related to the second month of the period.
MM02	SecondMonth	Tax is related to the first month of the period.
MM03	ThirdMonth	Tax is related to the third month of the period.
MM04	FourthMonth	Tax is related to the fourth month of the period.
MM05	FifthMonth	Tax is related to the fifth month of the period.
MM06	SixthMonth	Tax is related to the sixth month of the period.
MM07	SeventhMonth	Tax is related to the seventh month of the period.
MM08	EighthMonth	Tax is related to the eighth month of the period.
MM09	NinthMonth	Tax is related to the ninth month of the period.
MM10	TenthMonth	Tax is related to the tenth month of the period.
MM11	EleventhMonth	Tax is related to the eleventh month of the period.
MM12	TwelfthMonth	Tax is related to the twelfth month of the period.
QTR1	FirstQuarter	Tax is related to the first quarter of the period.
QTR2	SecondQuarter	Tax is related to the second quarter of the period.
QTR3	ThirdQuarter	Tax is related to the third quarter of the period.
QTR4	FourthQuarter	Tax is related to the forth quarter of the period.
HLF1	FirstHalf	Tax is related to the first half of the period.
HLF2	SecondHalf	Tax is related to the second half of the period.

Restricts

[TaxRecordPeriodCode on page 213](#)

2.2.3.75 TaxRecordPeriodCode

Definition: Specifies the period related to the tax payment.

Type: CodeSet

CodeName	Name	Definition
MM01	FirstMonth	Tax is related to the second month of the period.
MM02	SecondMonth	Tax is related to the first month of the period.
MM03	ThirdMonth	Tax is related to the third month of the period.
MM04	FourthMonth	Tax is related to the fourth month of the period.
MM05	FifthMonth	Tax is related to the fifth month of the period.
MM06	SixthMonth	Tax is related to the sixth month of the period.
MM07	SeventhMonth	Tax is related to the seventh month of the period.
MM08	EighthMonth	Tax is related to the eighth month of the period.
MM09	NinthMonth	Tax is related to the ninth month of the period.
MM10	TenthMonth	Tax is related to the tenth month of the period.
MM11	EleventhMonth	Tax is related to the eleventh month of the period.
MM12	TwelfthMonth	Tax is related to the twelfth month of the period.
QTR1	FirstQuarter	Tax is related to the first quarter of the period.
QTR2	SecondQuarter	Tax is related to the second quarter of the period.
QTR3	ThirdQuarter	Tax is related to the third quarter of the period.
QTR4	FourthQuarter	Tax is related to the forth quarter of the period.
HLF1	FirstHalf	Tax is related to the first half of the period.
HLF2	SecondHalf	Tax is related to the second half of the period.

Is restricted by

TaxRecordPeriod1Code on page 212

2.2.4 Date

2.2.4.1 ISODate

Definition: A particular point in the progression of time in a calendar year expressed in the YYYY-MM-DD format. This representation is defined in "XML Schema Part 2: Datatypes Second Edition - W3C Recommendation 28 October 2004" which is aligned with ISO 8601.

Type: Date

2.2.5 DateTime

2.2.5.1 ISODateTime

Definition: A particular point in the progression of time defined by a mandatory date and a mandatory time component, expressed in either UTC time format (YYYY-MM-DDThh:mm:ss.sssZ), local time with UTC offset format (YYYY-MM-DDThh:mm:ss.sss+/-hh:mm), or local time format (YYYY-MM-DDThh:mm:ss.sss). These representations are defined in "XML Schema Part 2: Datatypes Second Edition - W3C Recommendation 28 October 2004" which is aligned with ISO 8601.

Note on the time format:

1) beginning / end of calendar day

00:00:00 = the beginning of a calendar day

24:00:00 = the end of a calendar day

2) fractions of second in time format

Decimal fractions of seconds may be included. In this case, the involved parties shall agree on the maximum number of digits that are allowed.

Type: DateTime

2.2.6 IdentifierSet

2.2.6.1 AnyBICDec2014Identifier

Definition: Code allocated to a financial or non-financial institution by the ISO 9362 Registration Authority, as described in ISO 9362: 2014 - "Banking - Banking telecommunication messages - Business identifier code (BIC)".

Type: IdentifierSet

Identification scheme: SWIFT; AnyBICIdentifier

Format

pattern [A-Z0-9]{4,4}[A-Z]{2,2}[A-Z0-9]{2,2}([A-Z0-9]{3,3}){0,1}

Constraints

- **AnyBIC**

Only a valid Business identifier code is allowed. Business identifier codes for financial or non-financial institutions are registered and published by the ISO 9362 Registration Authority in the ISO directory of BICs, and consists of eight (8) or eleven (11) contiguous characters.

Error handling:

- *Error severity:* Fatal
- *Error Code:* D00008
- *Error Text:* Invalid BIC.

2.2.6.2 BICFIDec2014Identifier

Definition: Code allocated to a financial institution by the ISO 9362 Registration Authority as described in ISO 9362: 2014 - "Banking - Banking telecommunication messages - Business identifier code (BIC)".

Type: IdentifierSet

Identification scheme: SWIFT; BICIdentifier

Format

pattern [A-Z0-9]{4,4}[A-Z]{2,2}[A-Z0-9]{2,2}([A-Z0-9]{3,3}){0,1}

Constraints

- **BICFI**

Valid BICs for financial institutions are registered and published by the ISO 9362 Registration Authority in the ISO directory of BICs, and consist of eight (8) or eleven (11) contiguous characters.

Error handling:

- *Error severity:* Fatal
- *Error Code:* D00001
- *Error Text:* Invalid FI BIC.

2.2.6.3 IBAN2007Identifier

Definition: The International Bank Account Number is a code used internationally by financial institutions to uniquely identify the account of a customer at a financial institution as described in the 2007 edition of the ISO 13616 standard "Banking and related financial services - International Bank Account Number (IBAN)" and replaced by the more recent edition of the standard.

Type: IdentifierSet

Identification scheme: National Banking Association; International Bank Account Number (ISO 13616)

Format

pattern [A-Z]{2,2}[0-9]{2,2}[a-zA-Z0-9]{1,30}

Constraints**• IBAN**

A valid IBAN consists of all three of the following components: Country Code, check digits and BBAN.

Error handling:

- *Error severity:* Fatal
- *Error Code:* D00003
- *Error Text:* Invalid IBAN format or invalid check digits.

2.2.6.4 LEIdentifier

Definition: Legal Entity Identifier is a code allocated to a party as described in ISO 17442 "Financial Services - Legal Entity Identifier (LEI)".

Type: IdentifierSet

Identification scheme: Global LEI System; LEIdentifier

Format

pattern [A-Z0-9]{18,18}[0-9]{2,2}

2.2.6.5 UUIDv4Identifier

Definition: Universally Unique Identifier (UUID) version 4, as described in IETF RFC 4122 "Universally Unique Identifier (UUID) URN Namespace".

Type: IdentifierSet

Identification scheme: RFC4122; UUIDv4

Format

pattern [a-f0-9]{8}-[a-f0-9]{4}-4[a-f0-9]{3}-[89ab][a-f0-9]{3}-[a-f0-9]{12}

2.2.7 Indicator**2.2.7.1 BatchBookingIndicator**

Definition: Identifies whether the sending party requests a single debit or credit entry per individual transaction or a batch entry for the sum of the amounts of all transactions.

Type: Indicator

Meaning When True: Identifies that a batch entry for the sum of the amounts of all transactions in the batch or message is requested.

Meaning When False: Identifies that a single entry for each of the transactions in the batch or message is requested.

2.2.7.2 TrueFalseIndicator

Definition: A flag indicating a True or False value.

Type: Indicator

Meaning When True: True

Meaning When False: False

2.2.8 Quantity

2.2.8.1 DecimalNumber

Definition: Number of objects represented as a decimal number, for example 0.75 or 45.6.

Type: Quantity

Format

totalDigits	18
fractionDigits	17

2.2.8.2 Number

Definition: Number of objects represented as an integer.

Type: Quantity

Format

totalDigits	18
fractionDigits	0

2.2.9 Rate

2.2.9.1 BaseOneRate

Definition: Rate expressed as a decimal, for example, 0.7 is 7/10 and 70%.

Type: Rate

Format

totalDigits	11
fractionDigits	10
baseValue	1.0

2.2.9.2 PercentageRate

Definition: Rate expressed as a percentage, that is, in hundredths, for example, 0.7 is 7/10 of a percent, and 7.0 is 7%.

Type: Rate

Format

totalDigits	11
fractionDigits	10

baseValue 100.0

2.2.10 Text

2.2.10.1 Exact2NumericText

Definition: Specifies a numeric string with an exact length of 2 digits.

Type: Text

Format

pattern [0-9]{2}

2.2.10.2 Exact4AlphaNumericText

Definition: Specifies an alphanumeric string with a length of 4 characters.

Type: Text

Format

pattern [a-zA-Z0-9]{4}

2.2.10.3 Max1025Text

Definition: Specifies a character string with a maximum length of 1025 characters.

Type: Text

Format

minLength 1
maxLength 1025

2.2.10.4 Max105Text

Definition: Specifies a character string with a maximum length of 105 characters.

Type: Text

Format

minLength 1
maxLength 105

2.2.10.5 Max128Text

Definition: Specifies a character string with a maximum length of 128 characters.

Type: Text

Format

minLength 1

maxLength	128
-----------	-----

2.2.10.6 Max140Text

Definition: Specifies a character string with a maximum length of 140 characters.

Type: Text

Format

minLength	1
maxLength	140

2.2.10.7 Max15NumericText

Definition: Specifies a numeric string with a maximum length of 15 digits.

Type: Text

Format

pattern	[0-9]{1,15}
---------	-------------

2.2.10.8 Max16Text

Definition: Specifies a character string with a maximum length of 16 characters.

Type: Text

Format

minLength	1
maxLength	16

2.2.10.9 Max2048Text

Definition: Specifies a character string with a maximum length of 2048 characters.

Type: Text

Format

minLength	1
maxLength	2048

2.2.10.10 Max256Text

Definition: Specifies a character string with a maximum length of 256 characters.

Type: Text

Format

minLength	1
maxLength	256

2.2.10.11 Max34Text

Definition: Specifies a character string with a maximum length of 34 characters.

Type: Text

Format

minLength	1
maxLength	34

2.2.10.12 Max350Text

Definition: Specifies a character string with a maximum length of 350 characters.

Type: Text

Format

minLength	1
maxLength	350

2.2.10.13 Max35Text

Definition: Specifies a character string with a maximum length of 35 characters.

Type: Text

Format

minLength	1
maxLength	35

2.2.10.14 Max4Text

Definition: Specifies a character string with a maximum length of 4 characters.

Type: Text

Format

minLength	1
maxLength	4

2.2.10.15 Max70Text

Definition: Specifies a character string with a maximum length of 70characters.

Type: Text

Format

minLength	1
maxLength	70

2.2.10.16 PhoneNumber

Definition: The collection of information which identifies a specific phone or FAX number as defined by telecom services.

It consists of a "+" followed by the country code (from 1 to 3 characters) then a "-" and finally, any combination of numbers, "(", ")", "+" and "-" (up to 30 characters).

Type: Text

Format

pattern	\+[0-9]{1,3}-[0-9()+\-]{1,30}
---------	-------------------------------

2.2.11 Year

2.2.11.1 ISOYear

Definition: Year represented by YYYY (ISO 8601).

Type: Year

Legal Notices

Copyright

SWIFT © . All rights reserved.

You may copy this publication within your organisation. Any such copy must include these legal notices.

Confidentiality

This publication may contain SWIFT or third-party confidential information. Do not disclose this publication outside your organisation without the prior written consent of SWIFT.

Disclaimer

The information in this publication may change from time to time. You must always refer to the latest available version.

SWIFT Standards Intellectual Property Rights (IPR) Policy - End-User License Agreement

SWIFT Standards are licensed subject to the terms and conditions of the *SWIFT Standards IPR Policy - End-User License Agreement* available at www.swift.com > About SWIFT > Legal > SWIFT Standards IPR Policy.

Translations

The English version of SWIFT documentation is the only official version.

Trademarks and Patents

SWIFT is the trade name of S.W.I.F.T. SCRL. The following are registered trademarks of SWIFT: SWIFT, the SWIFT logo, 3SKey, Innotribe, Sibos, SWIFTNet, MyStandards, SWIFTReady, and Accord. Other product, service, or company names in this publication are trade names, trademarks, or registered trademarks of their respective owners.